## Calculation of Shallow Foundations



Load diagram


Bending moment diagram
Bottom reinforcement $A_{s x b}$

## M. El Gendy

Prof. of Geotechnical and Foundation Engineering

Copyright ©<br>GEOTEC Software Inc.<br>PO Box 14001 Richmond Road PO, Calgary AB, Canada T3E 7Y7<br>Tele.: +1 (587) 332-3323<br>geotec@geotecsoftware.com<br>www.geotecsoftware.com

## Preface

The purpose of this book is to provide a presentation of the shallow foundation design steps without complication in the form of simplified examples.

For more expansion in the analysis and design of foundations, especially if the previous conditions are not met, refer to our program "ELPLA" for analysis and design of foundations by the finite element method.
M. El Gendy

Prof. of Geotechnical and Foundation Engineering
Internet: http://geotecsoftware.com
Email: melgendy@elpla.com
February 2017

## Calculation of Shallow Foundations



Load diagram


M. El Gendy<br>Prof. of Geotechnical and Foundation Engineering

Content Page
v.تمهيـ
Summary of general requirements used in the design of shallow foundations. ..... vi
Part A
Solved Examples. ..... -1-
Bearing Capacity of the Soil ..... -2-
Example 1: Determining the allowable bearing capacity of a strip footing ..... -3-
Example 2: Determining the allowable bearing capacity of a square footing ..... -5-
Example 3: Determining the allowable bearing capacity of a rectangular footing. ..... -7-
Example 4: Determining the allowable bearing capacity for rectangular footing ..... -9-
Example 5: Determining the allowable bearing capacity of a circular footing ..... -11-
Example 6: Determining the diameter of a circular footing ..... -13-
Example 7: Determining the allowable load of a square footing due to eccentric load ..... -15-
Example 8: Check the allowable bearing capacity due to a horizontal load ..... -17-
Example 9: Determining the side of a square footing having an eccentric load ..... -20-
Example 10: Determining the eccentricity of a square footing ..... -22-
Example 11: Determining the allowable horizontal force ..... -24-
Example 12: Determining the side of a square footing carrying an inclined load ..... -26-
Example 13: Determining the allowable bearing capacity for layered subsoil ..... -28-
Example 14: Allowable bearing capacity for a horizontal load on layered subsoil ..... -32-
2- Design of Strip Footings ..... -35-
Example 15: Design of a strip footing to support a brick wall ..... -36-
Example 16: Design of a strip footing to support a concrete wall ..... -40-
3- Design of Isolated Footings ..... -45-
Example 17: Design of a square isolated footing of column $0.50 \times 0.50$ [m2] ..... -46-
Example 18: Design of a square isolated footing of column $0.30 \times 0.60$ [m2] ..... -51-
Example 19: Design of a rectangular isolated footing ..... -57-
Example 20: Design of a footing subjected to an axial load and moment ..... -63-
Example 21: Design of a circular footing for a circular column ..... -70-
4- Design of Rectangular Combined Footings ..... -77-
Example 22: Design of a rectangular combined footing for two interior columns (1) ..... -78-
Example 23: Design of a rectangular combined footing for two interior columns (2) ..... -85-
Example 24: Design of a rectangular combined footing for two edge columns ..... -93-
Example 25: Design of a rectangular combined footing for two unequal columns ..... -100-
Example 26: Design of a combined rectangular ribbed footing ..... -111-
Example 27: Design of a combined footing for three equal columns ..... -121-
Example 28: Design of a combined footing for three unequal columns ..... -128-
Example 29: Design of a combined ribbed footing for three unequal columns ..... -139-
5- Design of Combined Trapezoidal and T-Section Footings ..... -149-
Example 30: Design of a trapezoidal combined footing ..... -150-
Example 31: Design of a combined T-shape footing ..... -161-
6- Design of Strap Footings ..... -169-
Example 32: Design of a strap footing for two equal interior columns ..... -170-
Example 33: Design of a strap footing for two equal edge columns ..... -175-
Example 34: Design of a strap footing for two unequal columns. ..... -181-
7- Design of Rafts ..... -190-
Example 35: Design of a circular raft for a cylindrical core ..... -191-
Example 36: Design of a circular raft subjected to moment due to lateral loading ..... -196-
Example 37: Design of a square raft for a box core ..... -203-
Example 38: Design of a square raft for four equal interior columns ..... -208-
Example 39: Design of a square raft for four equal edge columns ..... -214-
Example 40: Design of a square raft for 9 equal columns ..... -221-
Part B
Theoretical Basis ..... -227-
1- Determine the bearing capacity of footing ..... -228-
1.1- Vertical concentrated load ..... -228-
1.2- Vertical eccentric load ..... -229-
1.3- Inclined load ..... -230-
1.4- Layered soil ..... -231-
1.5- Effect of water table on bearing capacity ..... -232-
1.6- Allowable and net bearing capacities ..... -234-
2- Determine Reinforced Concrete Design of Shallow Foundations ..... -236-
2.1- Critical sections for moment ..... -236-
2.2- Design for flexure moment ..... -237-
2.3- Check for punching shear ..... -240-
Mechanical properties of concrete according to ECP ..... -242-
3- Types of shallow foundations ..... -243-
References ..... -250-

تصميم الأساسات هي مادة تطبيقية، معظم المعلومات التي يعتمد عليها التصميم سبق دراستها وتناولها في فروع أخرى من الهندسة المدنية. هذا الكتاب محاولة لترتيب هذه المعلومات وتطويعها لتصميم الأساسات. الكتاب يبدأ بالأمثلة المحلولة لأنها أسرع وسيلة للفهم و ينتهي بالأساسيات النظية بدون إسهاب حتى لا يشتت تفكير الدارس إذا كان ملما بتلك الدعارف. تم تصميم القطاع الخرساني لجميع أساسات المسائل طبا للكود المصري لتصميم و تنفيذ الخرسانة المسلحة [1], طريقة
 مقاومة التربة طبقا للكود المصري لميكانيكا التربة و تنفيذ الأساسات [2]. لكي يكون التصميم مقبولا و آمنا تم مراعاة الشروط التالية في جميع المسائل: -1 الأساس متزن إنشائيا و محدد إستاتكياً، أي أن الفعل و رد الفعل معلومان في المسألة.
 3-3 القطاع الخراساني يستطيع مقاومة العزم الحاني و القص الثاقب الدعرض لهما بدون تسليح إضافي.

الغرض من الكتاب هو تقديم عرض لخطوات تصميم الأساسات الضحلة خالي من التعقيد في صورة مسائل مبسطة. و لمزيد من

 إلبلآ [5]، النظريات المستخدمة في صياغة برنامج إلبآ [6]، تصميم الخرسانة المسلحة [7]، أمثلة للتحقق و توضيح برنامج إلبلآ [8].

المؤلف محمد الجندي أستاذ الهندسة الجيوتقنية والأساسات http://geotecsoftware.com إنترنت بريد إلكتروني: melgendy@elpla.com فبراير 2017م

## Summary of general requirements used in the design of shallow foundations

- A thin plain concrete of thickness 0.15 [m] is chosen under all foundations and is not considered in any calculation.
- Design of section for all foundations is carried out only for the moment and punching shear other checks are not required.
- Minimum footing thickness is $t=0.3[\mathrm{~m}]$ and must be not less than the smallest side of the column. For more safety, footing thickness may be taken as $t=0.5[\mathrm{~m}]$.
- Minimum foundation level from the ground surface is $D_{f}=0.8[\mathrm{~m}]$.
- Minimum area of steel per meter is $A_{\text {smin }}=0.15[\%] \times$ concrete section $=0.0015 \times t \times 100$ $\left[\mathrm{cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.
- Maximum area of steel per meter is $A_{\text {smax }}=1.25[\%] \times$ concrete section $=0.0125 \times t \times 100$ [ $\mathrm{cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}$ ].
- Minimum diameter of steel bars used in foundation is $\Phi 13[\mathrm{~mm}]$
- Minimum No. of steel bars is 5
- Concrete cover $+1 / 2$ bar diameter $c=5[\mathrm{~cm}]$.
- Design of section for moment is carried out according to $E C P$, working stress method using the following equations:
- The depth of singly reinforced section $d[\mathrm{~m}]=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]}{b[\mathrm{~m}]}}$
- The area of tensile steel reinforcement $A_{\mathrm{s}}\left[\mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=\frac{M[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]}{k_{2} \times d[\mathrm{~m}]}$
- where $b$ is section width, $M$ is moment about section. Coefficients $k_{1}$ and $k_{2}$ are given in Table 1 and Table 2, while $A_{s}$ can be chosen from Table 3.
- All foundations are supposed to have material of concrete grade C250 and steel grade 36/52, where coefficients $k_{l}=0.766$ and $k_{2}=172$
- Allowable concrete punching strength is $q_{\text {pal }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

Table 1: $\quad$ Coefficients $k_{1}$ and $k_{2}$ for design of singly reinforced rectangular sections according to $E C P$ working stress method ( $\left.f_{s}=140-180\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]\right)$

| $\begin{gathered} f_{c} \\ {\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]} \end{gathered}$ | $f_{s}=140\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ |  |  | $f_{s}=160\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ |  |  | $f_{s}=180\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $k_{1}$ | $k_{2}$ | $\xi$ | $k_{1}$ | $k_{2}$ | $\xi$ | $k_{1}$ | $k_{2}$ | $\xi$ |
| 2.0 | 2.454 | 132 | 0.176 | 2.586 | 152 | 0.158 | 2.711 | 171 | 0.143 |
| 2.5 | 2.018 | 130 | 0.211 | 2.121 | 150 | 0.190 | 2.219 | 170 | 0.172 |
| 3.0 | 1.727 | 129 | 0.243 | 1.810 | 148 | 0.220 | 1.890 | 168 | 0.200 |
| 3.5 | 1.518 | 127 | 0.273 | 1.588 | 147 | 0.247 | 1.654 | 166 | 0.226 |
| 4.0 | 1.361 | 126 | 0.300 | 1.420 | 145 | 0.273 | 1.477 | 165 | 0.250 |
| 4.5 | 1.238 | 125 | 0.325 | 1.289 | 144 | 0.297 | 1.339 | 164 | 0.273 |
| 5.0 | 1.139 | 124 | 0.349 | 1.184 | 143 | 0.319 | 1.228 | 162 | 0.294 |
| 5.5 | 1.058 | 123 | 0.371 | 1.098 | 142 | 0.340 | 1.137 | 161 | 0.314 |
| 6.0 | 0.990 | 122 | 0.391 | 1.026 | 141 | 0.360 | 1.061 | 160 | 0.333 |
| 6.5 | 0.932 | 121 | 0.411 | 0.964 | 140 | 0.379 | 0.996 | 159 | 0.351 |
| 7.0 | 0.882 | 120 | 0.429 | 0.911 | 139 | 0.396 | 0.940 | 158 | 0.368 |
| 7.5 | 0.838 | 119 | 0.446 | 0.865 | 138 | 0.413 | 0.892 | 157 | 0.385 |
| 8.0 | 0.800 | 118 | 0.462 | 0.825 | 137 | 0.429 | 0.849 | 156 | 0.400 |
| 8.5 | 0.766 | 118 | 0.477 | 0.789 | 136 | 0.443 | 0.811 | 155 | 0.415 |
| 9.0 | 0.736 | 117 | 0.491 | 0.757 | 136 | 0.458 | 0.778 | 154 | 0.429 |
| 9.5 | 0.708 | 116 | 0.504 | 0.728 | 135 | 0.471 | 0.747 | 153 | 0.442 |
| 10.0 | 0.684 | 116 | 0.517 | 0.702 | 134 | 0.484 | 0.720 | 153 | 0.455 |
| 10.5 | 0.661 | 115 | 0.529 | 0.678 | 134 | 0.496 | 0.695 | 152 | 0.467 |
| 11.0 | 0.640 | 115 | 0.541 | 0.657 | 133 | 0.508 | 0.673 | 151 | 0.478 |
| 11.5 | 0.621 | 114 | 0.552 | 0.637 | 132 | 0.519 | 0.652 | 151 | 0.489 |
| 12.0 | 0.604 | 114 | 0.563 | 0.618 | 132 | 0.529 | 0.632 | 150 | 0.500 |

Units in [MN] and [m]. To convert from [MN/m²] to [kg/cm²], multiply by 10

Calculation of Shallow Foundations

Table 2: $\quad$ Coefficients $k_{1}$ and $k_{2}$ for design of singly reinforced rectangular sections according to $E C P$ working stress method ( $\left.f_{s}=200-240\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]\right)$

| $\begin{gathered} f_{c} \\ {\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]} \end{gathered}$ | $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ |  |  | $f_{s}=220\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ |  |  | $f_{s}=240\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $k_{1}$ | $k_{2}$ | $\xi$ | $k_{1}$ | $k_{2}$ | $\xi$ | $k_{1}$ | $k_{2}$ | $\xi$ |
| 2.0 | 2.831 | 191 | 0.130 | 2.946 | 211 | 0.120 | 3.057 | 231 | 0.111 |
| 2.5 | 2.313 | 189 | 0.158 | 2.403 | 209 | 0.146 | 2.490 | 229 | 0.135 |
| 3.0 | 1.966 | 188 | 0.184 | 2.040 | 208 | 0.170 | 2.111 | 227 | 0.158 |
| 3.5 | 1.718 | 186 | 0.208 | 1.780 | 206 | 0.193 | 1.840 | 226 | 0.179 |
| 4.0 | 1.532 | 185 | 0.231 | 1.585 | 204 | 0.214 | 1.637 | 224 | 0.200 |
| 4.5 | 1.387 | 183 | 0.252 | 1.433 | 203 | 0.235 | 1.478 | 222 | 0.220 |
| 5.0 | 1.270 | 182 | 0.273 | 1.311 | 201 | 0.254 | 1.351 | 221 | 0.238 |
| 5.5 | 1.175 | 181 | 0.292 | 1.211 | 200 | 0.273 | 1.247 | 220 | 0.256 |
| 6.0 | 1.095 | 179 | 0.310 | 1.127 | 199 | 0.290 | 1.160 | 218 | 0.273 |
| 6.5 | 1.027 | 178 | 0.328 | 1.057 | 197 | 0.307 | 1.086 | 217 | 0.289 |
| 7.0 | 0.968 | 177 | 0.344 | 0.996 | 196 | 0.323 | 1.022 | 216 | 0.304 |
| 7.5 | 0.917 | 176 | 0.360 | 0.943 | 195 | 0.338 | 0.967 | 214 | 0.319 |
| 8.0 | 0.873 | 175 | 0.375 | 0.896 | 194 | 0.353 | 0.919 | 213 | 0.333 |
| 8.5 | 0.833 | 174 | 0.389 | 0.855 | 193 | 0.367 | 0.876 | 212 | 0.347 |
| 9.0 | 0.798 | 173 | 0.403 | 0.818 | 192 | 0.380 | 0.838 | 211 | 0.360 |
| 9.5 | 0.766 | 172 | 0.416 | 0.785 | 191 | 0.393 | 0.803 | 210 | 0.373 |
| 10.0 | 0.738 | 171 | 0.429 | 0.755 | 190 | 0.405 | 0.772 | 209 | 0.385 |
| 10.5 | 0.712 | 171 | 0.441 | 0.728 | 189 | 0.417 | 0.744 | 208 | 0.396 |
| 11.0 | 0.688 | 170 | 0.452 | 0.704 | 189 | 0.429 | 0.719 | 207 | 0.407 |
| 11.5 | 0.666 | 169 | 0.463 | 0.681 | 188 | 0.439 | 0.695 | 207 | 0.418 |
| 12.0 | 0.646 | 168 | 0.474 | 0.660 | 187 | 0.450 | 0.674 | 206 | 0.429 |

Units in [MN] and [m]. To convert from [MN/m²] to [kg/cm²], multiply by 10

Calculation of Shallow Foundations

Table 3: $\quad$ Steel bars used in the foundation design

| $\begin{gathered} \Phi \\ {[\mathrm{mm}]} \end{gathered}$ | Area of cross-section in [ $\mathrm{cm}^{2}$ ] |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
| 16 | 2.01 | 4.02 | 6.03 | 8.04 | 10.10 | 12.10 | 14.10 | 16.10 | 18.10 | 20.10 |
| 19 | 2.84 | 5.67 | 8.50 | 11.30 | 14.20 | 17.00 | 19.90 | 22.70 | 25.50 | 28.40 |
| 22 | 3.80 | 7.60 | 11.40 | 15.20 | 19.00 | 22.80 | 26.60 | 30.40 | 34.20 | 38.00 |

## Part A Solved Examples

## 1- Bearing Capacity of the Soil

## Solved Examples

## Example 1: Determining the allowable bearing capacity of a strip footing

A long strip footing of $B=2.8[\mathrm{~m}]$ wide is placed at a depth of $D_{f}=1.2[\mathrm{~m}]$ in a soil of unit weight $\gamma$ $=18.5\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$, cohesion $c=5\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and angle of shearing resistance $\varphi=28\left[{ }^{\circ}\right]$. Determine the allowable bearing capacity of the footing for a factor of safety $F_{b}=2.5$ [-], Figure 1.


Figure 1: Strip footing

## Bearing capacity factors $N_{q}, N_{c}$ and $N_{\gamma}$

Bearing capacity factors can be determined form:

$$
\begin{gathered}
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan \varphi} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{\varphi}{2}\right) \\
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan 28} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{28}{2}\right)=14.72 \\
N_{c}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \cot \varphi \\
N_{c}=(14.72-1) \cot 28=25.8 \\
N_{\gamma}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \tan \varphi \\
N_{\gamma}=(14.72-1) \tan 28=7.3
\end{gathered}
$$

## Ultimate bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {ult }}$

The ultimate bearing capacity of the soil for a strip footing is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{u l t}=c N_{c}+\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q}+\gamma_{2} B N_{\gamma} \\
q_{u l t}=5 \times 25.8+18.5 \times 1.2 \times 14.72+18.5 \times 2.8 \times 7.3 \\
q_{u l t}=833.92\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Allowable bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {all }}$

The allowable bearing capacity of the soil is:

$$
q_{\text {all }}=\frac{q_{u l t}}{F_{b}}=\frac{833.92}{2.5}=333.57\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

## Solved Examples

## Example 2: Determining the allowable bearing capacity of a square footing

A square footing of $L=2.5[\mathrm{~m}]$ side is placed at a depth of $D_{f}=1.25[\mathrm{~m}]$ in a sand of unit weight $\gamma=$ $18\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$ and angle of shearing resistance $\varphi=35\left[^{\circ}\right]$. Determine the allowable bearing capacity of the footing for a factor of safety $F_{b}=2.5[-]$, Figure 2.


Figure 2: Square footing

## Bearing capacity factors $\boldsymbol{N}_{q}$ and $\boldsymbol{N}_{\boldsymbol{\gamma}}$

Bearing capacity factors for the square footing are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan \varphi} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{\varphi}{2}\right) \\
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan 35} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{35}{2}\right)=33.3 \\
N_{\gamma}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \tan \varphi \\
N_{\gamma}=(33.3-1) \tan 35=22.61
\end{gathered}
$$

Shape factors $\lambda_{q}$ and $\lambda_{\gamma}$
Shape factors for the square footing are:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \lambda_{q}=1.3 \\
& \lambda_{Y}=0.7
\end{aligned}
$$

## Ultimate bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{u l t}$

The ultimate bearing capacity for sand is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{u l t}=\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q}+\gamma_{2} B N_{\gamma} \lambda_{\gamma} \\
q_{u l t}=18 \times 1.25 \times 33.3 \times 1.3+18 \times 2.5 \times 22.61 \times 0.7 \\
q_{u l t}=1686\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
-5-
\end{gathered}
$$

## Allowable bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {all }}$

The allowable bearing capacity of the soil is:

$$
q_{\text {all }}=\frac{q_{u l t}}{F_{b}}=\frac{1686}{2.5}=674\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

## Solved Examples

## Example 3: Determining the allowable bearing capacity of a rectangular footing

Find the allowable bearing capacity of a rectangular footing having sides $L=2.8[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $B=2.1$ [m], Figure 3. The footing is placed at a depth of $D_{f}=1.2[\mathrm{~m}]$ in a soil of cohesion $c=2\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and angle of shearing resistance $\varphi=25\left[^{\circ}\right]$. Unit weights of the soil above and under the foundation level are $\gamma_{1}=18.5\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$ and $\gamma_{2}=8.69\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$, respectively. The factor of safety is $F_{b}=2.5[-]$.


Shape factors $\lambda_{c}, \lambda_{q}$ and $\lambda_{\gamma}$
Shape factors for the rectangular footing are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\lambda_{c}=\lambda_{q}=1+0.3 \frac{B}{L}=1+0.3 \frac{2.1}{2.8}=1.225 \\
\lambda_{\gamma}=1-0.3 \frac{B}{L}=1-0.3 \frac{2.1}{2.8}=0.775
\end{gathered}
$$

## Bearing capacity factors $N_{q}, N_{c}$ and $N_{\gamma}$

Bearing capacity factors for the rectangular footing are:

$$
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan \varphi} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{\varphi}{2}\right)
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan 25} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{25}{2}\right)=10.66 \\
N_{c}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \cot \varphi \\
N_{c}=(10.66-1) \cot 25=20.72 \\
N_{\gamma}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \tan \varphi \\
N_{\gamma}=(10.66-1) \tan 25=4.5
\end{gathered}
$$

## Ultimate bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {ult }}$

The ultimate bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{u l t}=c N_{c} \lambda_{c}+\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q}+\gamma_{2} B N_{\gamma} \lambda_{\gamma} \\
q_{u l t}=2 \times 20.72 \times 1.225+18.5 \times 1.2 \times 10.66 \times 1.225+8.69 \times 2.1 \times 4.5 \times 0.775 \\
q_{u l t}=404.31\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Allowable bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {all }}$
The allowable bearing capacity of the soil is:

$$
q_{a l l}=\frac{q_{u l t}}{F_{b}}=\frac{404.31}{2.5}=161.72\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

## Solved Examples

## Example 4: Determining the allowable bearing capacity for rectangular footing

A rectangular footing of $L=2.5[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $B=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ is placed at depth $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ in a soil of cohesion $c=7\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and angle of shearing resistance $\varphi=20\left[{ }^{\circ}\right]$. The ground water level lies at depth $h=1.75$ [m] under the ground surface as shown in Figure 4. Unit weight of the soil above the water table is $\gamma_{1}=18.5\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$, while that under the water table is $\gamma_{2}=8.69\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$. Find the allowable bearing capacity. The factor of safety is $F_{b}=2.5[-]$.


Figure 4: Bearing capacity for medium sand layer
Shape factors $\lambda_{c}, \lambda_{q}$ and $\lambda_{\gamma}$
Shape factors for the rectangular footing are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\lambda_{c}=\lambda_{q}=1+0.3 \frac{B}{L}=1+0.3 \frac{2.0}{2.5}=1.24 \\
\lambda_{\gamma}=1-0.3 \frac{B}{L}=1-0.3 \frac{2.0}{2.5}=0.76
\end{gathered}
$$

Soil weight until the foundation level is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\gamma_{1} D_{f}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \gamma_{s i} h_{i}=\gamma_{s 1} h_{1}+\gamma_{s 2} h_{2} \\
\gamma_{1} D_{f}=18.5 \times 1.75+8.69 \times 0.25 \\
\gamma_{1} D_{f}=34.55\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Bearing capacity factors $N_{q}, N_{c}$ and $N_{\gamma}$

Bearing capacity factors can be determined form:

$$
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan \varphi} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{\varphi}{2}\right)
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan 20} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{20}{2}\right)=6.4 \\
N_{c}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \cot \varphi \\
N_{c}=(6.4-1) \cot 20=14.84 \\
N_{\gamma}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \tan \varphi \\
N_{\gamma}=(6.4-1) \tan 20=1.97
\end{gathered}
$$

## Ultimate bearing capacity

The ultimate bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{u l t}=c N_{c} \lambda_{c}+\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q}+\gamma_{2} B N_{\gamma} \lambda_{\gamma} \\
q_{u l t}=7 \times 14.84 \times 1.24+34.55 \times 6.4 \times 1.24+8.69 \times 2.0 \times 1.97 \times 0.76 \\
q_{u l t}=429.02\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{\text {all }}=\frac{q_{u l t}}{F_{b}}=\frac{429.02}{2.5}=171.61\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Example 5: Determining the allowable bearing capacity of a circular footing

A circular footing of $D=2.8[\mathrm{~m}]$ diameter is placed at a depth of $D_{f}=1.2[\mathrm{~m}]$ in a soil of unit weight $\gamma_{1}=18.5\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$, cohesion $c=15\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and angle of shearing resistance $\varphi=20\left[^{\circ}\right]$. The ground water level lies at the foundation level as shown in Figure 5. Unite weight of the soil under the ground level is $\gamma_{2}=8.69\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$. Determine the allowable bearing capacity of the footing for a factor of safety $F_{b}=2.5[-]$.


Figure 5: Circular footing

## Bearing capacity factors $N_{q}, N_{c}$ and $N_{\gamma}$

Bearing capacity factors for the circular footing are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan \varphi} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{\varphi}{2}\right) \\
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan 20} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{20}{2}\right)=6.4 \\
N_{c}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \cot \varphi \\
N_{c}=(6.4-1) \cot 20=14.84 \\
N_{\gamma}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \tan \varphi \\
N_{\gamma}=(6.4-1) \tan 20=1.97
\end{gathered}
$$

Shape factors $\lambda_{y}, \lambda_{c}$ and $\lambda_{q}$
Shape factors for the rectangular footing are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\lambda_{\gamma}=0.7 \\
\lambda_{c}=\lambda_{q}=1.3
\end{gathered}
$$

## Ultimate bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{u l t}$

The ultimate bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{u l t}=c N_{c} \lambda_{c}+\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q}+\gamma_{2} B N_{\gamma} \lambda_{\gamma} \\
q_{u l t}=15 \times 14.84 \times 1.3+18.5 \times 1.2 \times 6.4 \times 1.3+8.69 \times 2.8 \times 1.97 \times 0.7 \\
q_{u l t}=507.64\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Allowable bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {all }}$

The allowable bearing capacity of the soil is:

$$
q_{\text {all }}=\frac{q_{u l t}}{F_{b}}=\frac{507.64}{2.5}=203.06\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

## Solved Examples

## Example 6: Determining the diameter of a circular footing

Find the diameter of a circular footing $D$ having a load of $P=650[\mathrm{kN}]$. The footing is placed at a depth of $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ in a clay layer of cohesion $c=45\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and unit weight $\gamma=18.5\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$, Figure 6. The factor of safety is $F_{b}=2.5[-]$.


Figure 6: Circular footing

## Bearing capacity factors $N_{c}, N_{q}$ and $N_{\gamma}$

Bearing capacity factors can for the clay are:

$$
N_{c}=5.0, N_{q}=1.0 \text { and } N_{\gamma}=0.0
$$

## Shape factors $\lambda_{c}$ and $\lambda_{q}$

Shape factors for the circular footing are:

$$
\lambda_{c}=\lambda_{q}=1.3
$$

## Allowable bearing capacity of the soil $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {all }}$

The allowable bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
q_{\text {all }}=\frac{P}{A_{f}}=\frac{650}{\frac{\pi D^{2}}{4}}=\frac{827.61}{D^{2}}
$$

## Ultimate bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {ult }}$

The ultimate bearing capacity may be determined from:

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{u l t}=q_{\text {all }} F_{b}=\frac{827.61}{D^{2}} 2.5=\frac{2069.01}{D^{2}} \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

But the ultimate bearing capacity equation for the clay is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{u l t}=c N_{c} \lambda_{c}+\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q} \\
q_{u l t}=45 \times 5.0 \times 1.3+18.5 \times 2.0 \times 1.0 \times 1.3
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{u l t}=340.6\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Equating the above two equations 1 and 2 gives:

$$
\frac{2069.01}{D^{2}}=340.6
$$

Then, the diameter of the footing is:

$$
D=2.47[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

## Solved Examples

## Example 7: Determining the allowable load of a square footing due to eccentric load

Find the allowable load $P_{\text {all }}$ of a square footing having a side $L=2.5[\mathrm{~m}]$ with eccentricity of $e_{x}=$ $0.25[\mathrm{~m}]$. The footing is placed at a depth of $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ in a layer of cohesion $c=10\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, angle of shearing resistance $\varphi=22\left[{ }^{\circ}\right]$ and unit weight of $\gamma=17.5\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$, Figure 7. The factor of safety is $F_{b}=2.5$ [-].


Figure 7: Square footing subjected to an eccentric load
Bearing capacity factors $N_{c}, N_{q}$ and $N_{\gamma}$
Bearing capacity factors for the soil can be determined form:

$$
\begin{gathered}
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan \varphi} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{\varphi}{2}\right) \\
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan 22} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{22}{2}\right)=7.82 \\
N_{c}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \cot \varphi \\
N_{c}=(7.82-1) \cot 22=16.88
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
N_{\gamma}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \tan \varphi \\
N_{\gamma}=(7.82-1) \tan 22=2.76
\end{gathered}
$$

## Shape factors $\lambda_{c}, \lambda_{q}$ and $\lambda_{\gamma}$

Shape factors for the square footing subjected to an eccentric load are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\lambda_{c}=\lambda_{q}=1+0.3 \frac{\grave{L}}{B} \\
\lambda_{c}=\lambda_{q}=1+0.3 \frac{2.0}{2.5}=1.24 \\
\lambda_{\gamma}=1-0.3 \frac{\grave{L}}{B}=1-0.3 \frac{2.0}{2.5}=0.76
\end{gathered}
$$

## Ultimate bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {ult }}$

The ultimate bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{u l t}=c N_{c} \lambda_{c}+\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q}+\gamma_{2} L^{`} N_{\gamma} \lambda_{\gamma} \\
q_{u l t}=10 \times 16.88 \times 1.24+17.5 \times 2.0 \times 7.82 \times 1.24+17.5 \times 2.0 \times 2.76 \times 0.76 \\
q_{u l t}=622.12\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Allowable bearing capacity of the soil $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {all }}$

The allowable bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
q_{\text {all }}=\frac{q_{u l t}}{F_{b}}=\frac{622.12}{2.5}=248.85\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

## Allowable load $\boldsymbol{P}_{\text {all }}$ of the footing

The load $P_{\text {all }}$ of the footing is given by:

$$
P_{\text {all }}=q_{\text {all }} \times A_{f}=q_{\text {all }} \times B \times L^{\prime}=248.85 \times 2.5 \times 2.0=1244.24[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

## Solved Examples

## Example 8: Check the allowable bearing capacity due to a horizontal load

Check the allowable bearing capacity of a square footing having a side $L=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ and carrying a horizontal load of $H=100[\mathrm{kN}]$ and vertical load of $V=500[\mathrm{kN}]$. The footing is placed at a depth of $D_{f}=1.6[\mathrm{~m}]$ in a soil layer of cohesion $c=30\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, angle of shearing resistance $\varphi=10\left[{ }^{\circ}\right]$ and unit weight of $\gamma=17.5\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$, Figure 8 . The factor of safety is $F_{b}=2.5[-]$.


Figure 8: Square footing subjected to horizontal load

## Horizontal and vertical ultimate bearing capacities $H_{b}, V_{b}$ :

The horizontal and vertical ultimate bearing capacities are given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H_{b}=F_{b} H=2.5 \times 100=250[\mathrm{kN}] \\
& V_{b}=F_{b} V=2.5 \times 500=1250[\mathrm{kN}]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Allowable bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {all }}$

The allowable bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{\text {all }}=\frac{V}{A_{f}}=\frac{500}{2.0^{2}}=125\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Bearing capacity factors $N_{q}, N_{c}$ and $N_{\gamma}$
Bearing capacity factors for the soil can be determined form:

$$
\begin{gathered}
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan \varphi} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{\varphi}{2}\right) \\
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan 10} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{10}{2}\right)=2.47 \\
N_{c}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \cot \varphi \\
N_{c}=(2.47-1) \cot 10=8.34 \\
N_{\gamma}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \tan \varphi
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
N_{\gamma}=(2.47-1) \tan 10=0.26
$$

## Inclination factors $\boldsymbol{i}_{q}$ and $\boldsymbol{i}_{\boldsymbol{c}}$

The inclination factors for the soil can be determined from:

$$
\begin{gathered}
i_{q}=\left[1-0.7 \frac{H_{b}}{V_{b}+A_{f} c \cot \varphi}\right]^{3} \\
i_{q}=\left[1-0.7 \frac{250}{1250+4.0 \times 30 \times \cot 10}\right]^{3}=0.75 \\
i_{\gamma}=\left[1-\frac{H_{b}}{V_{b}+A_{f} c \cot \varphi}\right]^{3} \\
i_{\gamma}=\left[1-\frac{250}{1250+4.0 \times 30 \times \cot 10}\right]^{3}=0.66 \\
i_{c}=i_{q}-\frac{1-i_{q}}{N_{q}-1} \\
i_{c}=0.75-\frac{1-0.75}{2.47-1}=0.58
\end{gathered}
$$

Shape factors $\lambda_{c}, \lambda_{q}$ and $\lambda_{\gamma}$
Shape factors for the square footing are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\lambda_{c}=\lambda_{q}=1.3 \\
\lambda_{\gamma}=0.7
\end{gathered}
$$

## Ultimate bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{u l t}$

The ultimate bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{u l t}=c N_{c} \lambda_{c} i_{c}+\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q} i_{q}+\gamma_{2} B N_{\gamma} \lambda_{\gamma} i_{\gamma} \\
q_{u l t}=30 \times 8.34 \times 1.3 \times 0.58+17.5 \times 1.6 \times 2.47 \times 1.3 \times 0.75+17.5 \times 2.0 \times 0.26 \times 0.7 \times 0.66 \\
q_{u l t}=260.29\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Allowable bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {all }}$

The allowable bearing capacity of the soil is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{\text {all }}=\frac{q_{u l t}}{F_{b}}=\frac{260.29}{2.5}=104.11\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Comparing the bearing capacities obtained from Equations 1 and 2 shows that the footing dimensions are unsafe. The footing size must be increased.

## Solved Examples

## Example 9: Determining the side of a square footing having an eccentric load

Find the side of a square footing $L$ having an allowable load of $P_{\text {all }}=620[\mathrm{kN}]$ with eccentricity of $e_{x}$ $=0.25[\mathrm{~m}]$. The footing is placed at a depth of $D_{f}=2.0$ [m] in a clay layer of cohesion $c=43$ $\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and unit weight $\gamma=17.5\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$, Figure 9 . The factor of safety is $F_{b}=2.5[-]$.


Figure 9: Square footing subjected to an eccentric load

## Bearing capacity factors $N_{c}, N_{q}$ and $N_{\gamma}$

Bearing capacity factors for the clay can be determined from:

$$
N_{c}=5.0, N_{q}=1.0 \text { and } N_{\gamma}=0.0
$$

## Shape factors $\lambda_{c}$ and $\lambda_{q}$

Shape factors for the square footing subjected to an eccentric load are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\lambda_{c}=\lambda_{q}=1+0.3 \frac{L}{B} \\
\lambda_{c}=\lambda_{q}=1+0.3 \frac{L-0.5}{L}=1.3-\frac{0.15}{L}
\end{gathered}
$$

## Allowable bearing capacity of the soil $q_{\text {all }}$

The allowable bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
q_{\text {all }}=\frac{P_{\text {all }}}{A_{f}}=\frac{620}{B L}=\frac{620}{L(L-0.5)}=\frac{620}{L^{2}-0.5 L}
$$

## Ultimate bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {ult }}$

The ultimate bearing capacity may be determined from:

$$
q_{u l t}=q_{\text {all }} F_{b}=\frac{620}{L^{2}-0.5 L} \quad 2.5=\frac{1550}{L^{2}-0.5 L}
$$

But the ultimate bearing capacity equation for the clay is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{u l t}=c N_{c} \lambda_{c}+\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q} \\
q_{u l t}=43 \times 5.0 \times\left(1.3-\frac{0.15}{L}\right)+17.5 \times 2.0 \times 1.0 \times\left(1.3-\frac{0.15}{L}\right) \\
q_{u l t}=250 \times\left(1.3-\frac{0.15}{L}\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

Equating the above two equations gives:

$$
\frac{1550}{L^{2}-0.5 L}=250 \times\left(1.3-\frac{0.15}{L}\right)
$$

or

$$
1.3 L^{2}-0.8 L-6.125=0.0
$$

Solving the above equation leads to:

$$
L=2.5[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

## Solved Examples

## Example 10: Determining the eccentricity of a square footing

Find the allowable eccentricity $e_{x}$ for a square footing of a side $L=2.5[\mathrm{~m}]$ and an allowable load of $P_{\text {all }}=620[\mathrm{kN}]$. The footing is placed at depth of $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ in a clay layer of cohesion $c=43$ $\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and unit weight $\gamma=17.5\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$, Figure 10 . The factor of safety is $F_{b}=2.5[-]$.


Figure 10: Footing subjected to an eccentric load

## Bearing capacity factors $N_{c}, N_{q}$ and $N_{\gamma}$

Bearing capacity factors for the clay can be determined from:

$$
N_{c}=5.0, N_{q}=1.0 \text { and } N_{\gamma}=0.0
$$

## Shape factors $\lambda_{c}$ and $\lambda_{q}$

Shape factors for the square footing subjected to an eccentric load are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\lambda_{c}=\lambda_{q}=1+0.3 \frac{\grave{L}}{B} \\
\lambda_{c}=\lambda_{q}=1+0.3 \frac{\grave{L}}{2.5}=1+0.12 \dot{L}
\end{gathered}
$$

## Allowable bearing capacity of the soil $q_{\text {all }}$

The allowable bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
q_{\text {all }}=\frac{P}{A_{f}}=\frac{620}{2.5 L^{\prime}}=\frac{248}{L^{\grave{ }}}
$$

## Ultimate bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {ult }}$

The ultimate bearing capacity may be determined from:

$$
q_{u l t}=q_{\text {all }} F_{b}=\frac{248}{\grave{L}} 2.5=\frac{620}{L^{\grave{ }}}
$$

But the ultimate bearing capacity equation for the clay is given by:

$$
\begin{gather*}
q_{u l t}=c N_{c} \lambda_{c}+\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q} \\
q_{u l t}=43 \times 5 \times(1+0.12 \grave{L})+17.5 \times 2.0 \times 1.0 \times(1+0.12 \grave{L}) \\
q_{u l t}=250 \times(1+0.12 \grave{L}) \tag{1}
\end{gather*}
$$

Equating the above two equations 1 and 2 gives:

$$
\frac{620}{L^{\prime}}=250 \times(1+0.12 \grave{L})
$$

or

$$
\begin{equation*}
0.12 L^{2}+\check{L}-2.48=0.0 \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Solving the above equation leads to:

$$
\grave{L}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

but

$$
\begin{gathered}
L=L-2 e_{x} \\
2.0=2.5-2 e_{x} \\
e_{x}=0.25[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Example 11: Determining the allowable horizontal force

Find the allowable horizontal force $H$ that can be carried by a square footing of a side $L=2.5$ [m]. The footing carries a vertical load of $V=442[\mathrm{kN}]$ and rests on a clay layer having cohesion of $c=$ $40\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and unit weight of $\gamma=18\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$. Foundation depth is $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the ground surface, Figure 11. The factor of safety is $F_{b}=2.5[-]$.


Figure 11: Square footing subjected to horizontal load

## Ultimate bearing capacity $V_{b}, H_{b}$ and $q_{u t t}$ :

The vertical ultimate bearing capacity is given by:

$$
V_{b}=F_{b} V=2.5 \times 442=1105[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

While the ultimate bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
q_{u l t}=\frac{V_{b}}{A_{f}}=\frac{1105}{2.5^{2}}=176.8\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

## Inclination factors $\boldsymbol{i}_{\boldsymbol{c}}$ and $\boldsymbol{i}_{\boldsymbol{q}}$

The inclination factors for the clay are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
i_{q}=1.0 \\
i_{c}=0.5+0.5 \sqrt{1-\frac{H_{b}}{c A_{f}}} \\
i_{c}=0.5+0.5 \sqrt{1-\frac{H_{b}}{40 \times 2.5^{2}}}
\end{gathered}
$$

The inclination factor $i_{c}$ can be rewritten in relation to $H_{b}$ as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
i_{c}=0.5+0.5 \sqrt{1-\frac{H_{b}}{250}} \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Bearing capacity factors $N_{c}, N_{q}$ and $N_{\gamma}$
Bearing capacity factors for the clay can be determined from:

$$
N_{c}=5.0, N_{q}=1.0 \text { and } N_{\gamma}=0.0
$$

## Shape factors $\lambda_{c}$ and $\lambda_{q}$

Shape factors for the square footing are:

$$
\lambda_{c}=\lambda_{q}=1.3
$$

## Ultimate bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {ult }}$

The ultimate bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{u l t}=c N_{c} \lambda_{c} i_{c}+\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q} i_{q} \\
q_{u l t}=40 \times 5.0 \times 1.3 i_{c}+18 \times 2.0 \times 1.0 \times 1.3 \times 1.0
\end{gathered}
$$

or

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{u l t}=260 i_{c}+46.8 \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Horizontal forces $\boldsymbol{H}_{\boldsymbol{b}}$ and $\boldsymbol{H}$

Substituting Eq. (1) in Eq. (2), gives:

$$
176.8=260\left(0.5+0.5 \sqrt{1-\frac{H_{b}}{250}}\right)+46.8
$$

Solving the above equation, gives the horizontal ultimate bearing capacity as:

$$
H_{b}=250[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

The allowable horizontal force is given by:

$$
H=\frac{H_{b}}{F_{b}}=\frac{250}{2.5}=100[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

## Example 12: Determining the side of a square footing carrying an inclined load

Find the side $L$ of a square footing carrying a vertical load of $V=442[\mathrm{kN}]$ and a horizontal load of $H$ $=100[\mathrm{kN}]$. The footing rests on a clay layer having cohesion of $c=40\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and unit weight of $\gamma$ $=18\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$. Foundation depth is $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the ground surface, Figure 12. The factor of safety is $F_{b}=2.5[-]$.


Figure 12: Square footing subjected to an inclined load

## Ultimate bearing capacity $H_{b}, V_{b}$ and $q_{u l t}$ :

The horizontal and vertical ultimate bearing capacities are given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H_{b}=F_{b} H=2.5 \times 100=250[\mathrm{kN}] \\
& V_{b}=F_{b} V=2.5 \times 442=1105[\mathrm{kN}]
\end{aligned}
$$

while the ultimate bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{u l t}=\frac{V_{b}}{A_{f}}=\frac{1105}{A_{f}} \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Inclination factors $\boldsymbol{i}_{\boldsymbol{q}}$ and $\boldsymbol{i}_{\boldsymbol{c}}$

The inclination factors for the clay are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
i_{q}=1.0 \\
i_{c}=0.5+0.5 \sqrt{1-\frac{H_{b}}{c A_{f}}} \\
i_{c}=0.5+0.5 \sqrt{1-\frac{250}{40 \times A_{f}}}
\end{gathered}
$$

The inclination factor $i_{c}$ can be rewritten in relation to $A_{f}$ as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
i_{c}=0.5+0.5 \sqrt{1-\frac{6.25}{A_{f}}} \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Bearing capacity factors $N_{c}, N_{q}$ and $N_{\gamma}$

Bearing capacity factors for the clay can be determined from:

$$
N_{c}=5.0, N_{q}=1.0 \text { and } N_{\gamma}=0.0
$$

## Shape factors $\lambda_{c}$ and $\lambda_{q}$

Shape factors for the square footing are:

$$
\lambda_{c}=\lambda_{q}=1.3
$$

## Ultimate bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {ult }}$

The ultimate bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{u l t}=c N_{c} \lambda_{c} i_{c}+\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q} i_{q} \\
q_{u l t}=40 \times 5.0 \times 1.3 i_{c}+18 \times 2.0 \times 1.0 \times 1.3 \times 1.0
\end{gathered}
$$

or

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{u l t}=260 i_{c}+46.8 \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Footing area $\boldsymbol{A}_{\boldsymbol{f}}$ and side $\boldsymbol{L}$

Substituting Eq. (1) and (2) in Eq. (3), gives:

$$
\frac{1105}{A_{f}}=260\left(0.5+0.5 \sqrt{1-\frac{6.25}{A_{f}}}\right)+46.8
$$

Rearranging the equation, leads to:

$$
A_{f}{ }^{2}-19.85 A_{f}+85=0
$$

Solving the equation, gives:

$$
A_{f}=6.25\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \text { and } L=2.5[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

## Solved Examples

## Example 13: Determining the allowable bearing capacity for layered subsoil

A rectangular footing of $L=2.5[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $B=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ is placed at depth of $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ in layered subsoil as shown in Figure 13. Find the allowable bearing capacity for a factor of safety $F_{b}=2.5[-]$.


Figure 13: capacity for medium sand layer

## 1. Bearing capacity for medium sand layer

Assume all layers under the footing are replaced by equivalent medium sand layer.
Soil weight until the foundation level is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\gamma_{a} D_{f}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \gamma_{i} h_{i}=\gamma_{1} h_{1}+\gamma_{2} h_{2}+\gamma_{3} h_{3} \\
\gamma_{a} D_{f}=18 \times 0.5+18.5 \times 1.1+11 \times 0.4 \\
\gamma_{a} D_{f}=33.75\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Shape factors $\lambda_{q}$ and $\lambda_{\gamma}$
Shape factors for the rectangular footing are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\lambda_{q}=1+0.3 \frac{B}{L}=1+0.3 \frac{2.0}{2.5}=1.24 \\
\lambda_{\gamma}=1-0.3 \frac{B}{L}=1-0.3 \frac{2.0}{2.5}=0.76 \\
-28-
\end{gathered}
$$

## Bearing capacity factors $N_{q}, N_{c}$ and $N_{\gamma}$ for medium sand layer

Bearing capacity factors can be determined form:

$$
\begin{gathered}
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan \varphi} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{\varphi}{2}\right) \\
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan 30} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{30}{2}\right)=18.4 \\
N_{\gamma}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \tan \varphi \\
N_{\gamma}=(18.4-1) \tan 30=10.05
\end{gathered}
$$

## Ultimate bearing capacity for medium sand $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {ult }} 1$

The ultimate bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
\begin{gather*}
q_{u t t 1}=\gamma_{a} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q}+\gamma_{4} B N_{\gamma} \lambda_{\gamma} \\
q_{u t t 1}=33.75 \times 18.4 \times 1.24+11 \times 2.0 \times 10.05 \times 0.76 \\
q_{u l t 1}=938.07\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{o}=\frac{q_{u l t 1}}{F_{b}}=\frac{938.07}{2.5}=375.23\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \tag{1}
\end{gather*}
$$

## 2. Bearing capacity for medium sand layer

## New footing dimensions

$B \grave{ }=3.5[\mathrm{~m}], L^{\grave{ }}=4[\mathrm{~m}]$
Shape factors $\lambda_{c}, \lambda_{q}$ and $\lambda_{\gamma}$
Shape factors for the rectangular footing are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\lambda_{c}=\lambda_{q}=1+0.3 \frac{B}{L}=1+0.3 \frac{3.5}{4.0}=1.2625 \\
\lambda_{\gamma}=1-0.3 \frac{B}{\grave{L}}=1-0.3 \frac{3.5}{4.0}=0.7375
\end{gathered}
$$



Figure 14: Bearing capacity for clay, sand layer

Assume all layers under the clay, sand layer are replaced by equivalent clay, sand layer as shown in Figure 14.

Soil weight until the foundation level is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\gamma_{a} D_{f}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \gamma_{i} h_{i}=\gamma_{1} h_{1}+\gamma_{2} h_{2}+\gamma_{3} h_{3}+\gamma_{4} h_{4} \\
\gamma_{a} D_{f}=18 \times 0.5+18.5 \times 1.1+11 \times 0.4+11 \times 1.5 \\
\gamma_{a} D_{f}=50.25\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Bearing capacity factors $N_{q}, N_{c}$ and $N_{\gamma}$ for clay, sand layer

Bearing capacity factors can be determined from:

$$
\begin{gathered}
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan \varphi} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{\varphi}{2}\right) \\
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan 25} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{25}{2}\right)=10.66
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
N_{c}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \cot \varphi \\
N_{c}=(10.66-1) \cot 25=20.72 \\
N_{\gamma}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \tan \varphi \\
N_{\gamma}=(10.66-1) \tan 25=4.5
\end{gathered}
$$

## Ultimate bearing capacity for clay, sand $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {ult }} 2$

The ultimate bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{u l t 2}=c N_{c} \lambda_{c}+\gamma_{a} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q}+\gamma_{4} B N_{\gamma} \lambda_{\gamma} \\
q_{u t t_{2}}=5 \times 20.72 \times 1.2625+50.25 \times 10.66 \times 1.2625+12 \times 3.5 \times 4.5 \times 0.7375 \\
q_{u t t 2}=946.46\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{1}=\frac{q_{u t+2}}{F_{b}}=\frac{946.46}{2.5}=378.58\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

But

$$
q_{o}=q_{1} \frac{A_{2}}{A_{1}}
$$

then

$$
\begin{gather*}
q_{o}=q_{1} \frac{\left(B+h_{4}\right)\left(L+h_{4}\right)}{B L} \\
q_{o}=378.58 \frac{(2+1.5)(2.5+1.5)}{2 \times 2.5} \\
q_{o}=1060.04\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \tag{2}
\end{gather*}
$$

By comparing equations (1) and (2) the allowable bearing capacity for the two layers (Medium sand and clay, sand) is the smallest value of $q_{o}$, then the allowable bearing capacity value is $q_{o}=375.227$ [ $\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m} 2$ ] and the ultimate bearing capacity value is $q_{u l t}=938.068[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m} 2]$.

## Solved Examples

## Example 14: Determining the allowable vertical load

A rectangular footing of $L=3.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $B=2.5[\mathrm{~m}]$ and carrying a horizontal load of $H=100[\mathrm{kN}]$ and vertical load $V$. The footing is placed at depth of $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ in layered subsoil as shown in Figure 15. Determine the allowable bearing capacity for a factor of safety $F_{b}=2.5[-]$.


Figure 15: Rectangular footing subjected to an inclined load

## Horizontal and vertical ultimate bearing capacities $H_{b}, V_{b}$ :

The horizontal ultimate bearing capacity is given by:

$$
H_{b}=F_{b} H=2.5 \times 100=250[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

## Average soil weight until the foundation level

Average soil weight until the foundation level is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\gamma_{a} D_{f}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \gamma_{i} h_{i}=\gamma_{1} h_{1}+\gamma_{2} h_{2}+\gamma_{3} h_{3} \\
\gamma_{a} D_{f}=18 \times 0.5+18.5 \times 1.1+11 \times 0.4 \\
\gamma_{a} D_{f}=33.75\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Shape factors $\lambda_{q}$ and $\lambda_{\gamma}$
Shape factors for the rectangular footing are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\lambda_{c}=\lambda_{q}=1+0.3 \frac{B}{L}=1+0.3 \frac{2.5}{3.0}=1.25 \\
\lambda_{\gamma}=1-0.3 \frac{B}{L}=1-0.3 \frac{2.5}{3.0}=0.75
\end{gathered}
$$

## Bearing capacity factors $N_{q}, N_{c}$ and $N_{\gamma}$

Bearing capacity factors can be determined form:

$$
\begin{gathered}
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan \varphi} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{\varphi}{2}\right) \\
N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan 30} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{25}{2}\right)=10.66 \\
N_{c}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \cot \varphi \\
N_{c}=(10.66-1) \cot 25=20.72 \\
N_{\gamma}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \tan \varphi \\
N_{\gamma}=(10.66-1) \tan 25=4.5
\end{gathered}
$$

## Inclination factors $\boldsymbol{i}_{\boldsymbol{q}}$ and $\boldsymbol{i}_{\boldsymbol{c}}$

The inclination factors for the soil can be determined from:

$$
\begin{gathered}
i_{q}=\left[1-0.7 \frac{H_{b}}{V_{b}+A_{f} c \cot \varphi}\right]^{3} \\
i_{q}=\left[1-0.7 \frac{250}{1250+3.0 \times 2.5 \times 5 \times \cot 25}\right]^{3}=0.66 \\
i_{\gamma}=\left[1-\frac{H_{b}}{V_{b}+A_{f} c \cot \varphi}\right]^{3} \\
i_{\gamma}=\left[1-\frac{250}{1250+3.0 \times 2.5 \times 5 \times \cot 25}\right]^{3}=0.54 \\
i_{c}=i_{q}-\frac{1-i_{q}}{N_{q}-1} \\
i_{c}=0.66-\frac{1-0.66}{10.66-1}=0.63
\end{gathered}
$$

## Ultimate bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{u l t}$

The ultimate bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{u l t}=c N_{c} \lambda_{c} i_{c}+\gamma_{a} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q} i_{q}+\gamma_{2} B N_{\gamma} \lambda_{\gamma} i_{\gamma} \\
q_{u l t}=5 \times 20.72 \times 1.25 \times 0.63+33.75 \times 10.66 \times 1.25 \times 0.66+11 \times 2.5 \times 4.5 \times 0.75 \times 0.54 \\
q_{u l t}=428.52\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Allowable bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {all }}$

The allowable bearing capacity of the soil is given by:

$$
q_{a l l}=\frac{q_{u l t}}{F_{b}}=\frac{428.52}{2.5}=171.41\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

## 2- Design of Strip Footings

## Example 15: Design of a strip footing to support a brick wall

Design a strip footing to support a brick wall of thickness $b=0.4$ [m], carrying a load of $p=450$ $[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}]$. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=175\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=1.25[\mathrm{~m}]$, Figure 17. Average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{\mathrm{a}}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.


Figure 17: Strip footing to support a brick wall

## 1. Determining footing dimensions

Take 1.0 [m] strip, then

$$
P=p \times 1.0=450 \times 1=450[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Total load at the foundation level is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
P_{T}=\frac{P}{\left(1-\frac{\gamma_{a} D_{f}}{q_{\text {all }}}\right)} \\
P_{T}=\frac{450}{\left(1-\frac{20 \times 1.25}{175}\right)}=525[\mathrm{kN}] \\
A_{f}=\frac{P_{T}}{q_{\text {all }}}=\frac{525}{175}=3.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

take $B=3.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ strip footing

## 2. Computing the contact pressure under the footing $\boldsymbol{q}_{o}$

$$
q_{o}=\frac{P}{B}=\frac{0.45}{3.0}=0.15[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

## 3. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $d_{m}$

The maximum bending moment for the strip footing to support a brick wall lies at a distance $b / 4=$ $0.1[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the brick wall as shown in Figure 18.


Figure 18: Critical section of moment for a strip footing to support a brick wall

$$
\begin{gathered}
M=q_{o} \frac{c^{2}}{2} \\
M=0.15 \frac{1.4^{2}}{2}=0.147[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.147}{1.0}}=0.294[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.294[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.
The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.45 \sqrt{\frac{1.0}{0.147}}=1.174
$$

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=1.175, f_{c}=5.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=181$

## Solved Examples

## 4. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

The required area of steel reinforcement per meter $A_{s}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s}=\frac{M}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s}=\frac{0.147}{181 \times 0.45}=0.001805\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right] \\
A_{s}=18.05\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $9 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=18.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$

## 5. Check of shear

The critical shear section lies a distance $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the wall as shown in Figure 19 .


Figure 19: Critical section for shear

## Stresses

Soil pressure under the footing
Allowable shear strength for concrete C 250

$$
\begin{aligned}
& q_{o}=0.15\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{\text {sall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Check for section capacity

The shear force $Q_{s}$ is

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{s}=q_{o} l \\
Q_{s}=0.15 \times 0.85=0.1275[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The shear stress $q_{s}$ is given by:

$$
q_{s}=\frac{Q_{s}}{B d}
$$

$$
q_{s}=\frac{0.1275}{1.0 \times 0.45}=0.283\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

$q_{\text {sall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{s}=0.283\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for shear.
Figure 20 shows the footing dimensions and reinforcement.


## Solved Examples

## Example 16: Design of a strip footing to support a concrete wall

Design a strip footing to support a concrete wall of thickness $b=0.25[\mathrm{~m}]$ and reinforced by $5 \Phi 13 / \mathrm{m}$ in both directions, carrying a load of $P=400[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}]$. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=185$ $\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=1.5[\mathrm{~m}]$, Figure 21. Average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20$ [ $\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}$ ].


Figure 21: Strip footing to support a concrete wall
The design is conducted in steps as follows:

## 1. Determining footing dimensions

Take 1.0 [m] strip, then

$$
P=p \times 1.0=400 \times 1=400[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Total load at the foundation level is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
P_{T}=\frac{P}{\left(1-\frac{\gamma_{a} D_{f}}{q_{a l l}}\right)} \\
P_{T}=\frac{400}{\left(1-\frac{20 \times 1.5}{185}\right)}=477.42[\mathrm{kN}] \\
A_{f}=\frac{P_{T}}{q_{\text {all }}}=\frac{477.42}{185}=2.58\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
\text { take } B=2.6[\mathrm{~m}] \text { strip footing }
$$

2. Computing the contact pressure under the footing $\boldsymbol{q}_{o}$

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{o}=\frac{P}{B}=\frac{0.4}{2.6}=0.154[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}] \\
-40-
\end{gathered}
$$

## 3. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

The maximum bending moment lies at the wall face as shown in Figure 22.


Figure 22: Critical section of moment for a strip footing to support a concrete wall

$$
\begin{gathered}
M=q_{o} \frac{c^{2}}{2} \\
M=0.154 \frac{1.175^{2}}{2}=0.106[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.106}{1.0}}=0.249[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.249[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.
The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.45 \sqrt{\frac{1.0}{0.106}}=1.38
$$

## Solved Examples

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=1.387, f_{c}=4.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=183$

## 4. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

The required area of steel reinforcement per meter $A_{s}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s}=\frac{M}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s}=\frac{0.106}{183 \times 0.45}=0.001287\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right] \\
A_{s}=12.87\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $7 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=14.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$

## 5. Check of shear

The critical shear section lies a distance $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the wall as shown in Figure 23.


Figure 23: Critical section for shear

## Stresses

Soil pressure under the footing
Allowable shear strength for concrete C 250

$$
\begin{aligned}
& q_{o}=0.154\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{\text {sall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Check for section capacity

The shear force $Q_{s}$ is

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{s}=q_{o} l \\
Q_{s}=0.154 \times 0.725=0.112[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The shear stress $q_{s}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{s}=\frac{Q_{s}}{B d} \\
q_{s}=\frac{0.112}{1.0 \times 0.45}=0.249\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{\text {sall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{s}=0.249\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for shear.
Figure 24 shows the footing dimensions and reinforcement.

## Solved Examples



Figure 24: Footing dimensions and reinforcement

## 3- Design of Isolated Footings

## Example 17: Design of a square isolated footing of column $0.50 \times 0.50\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$

Design a square isolated footing of column $0.50 \times 0.50\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ reinforced by $4 \Phi 19$, carrying a load of $P$ $=1125[\mathrm{kN}]$. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=198\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=1.5[\mathrm{~m}]$ and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$, Figure 25 .


Figure 25: Square isolated footing
The design is conducted in steps as follows:

## 1. Determining footing dimensions

$$
\begin{gathered}
P_{T}=\frac{P}{\left(1-\frac{\gamma_{a} D_{f}}{q_{\text {all }}}\right)} \\
P_{T}=\frac{1125}{\left(1-\frac{20 \times 1.5}{198}\right)}=1326[\mathrm{kN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
A_{f}=\frac{P_{T}}{q_{\text {all }}}=\frac{1326}{198}=6.70\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

take $A_{f}=2.6 \times 2.6=6.76\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ square footing

## 2. Computing the contact pressure under the footing $\boldsymbol{q}_{o}$

$$
q_{o}=\frac{P}{A_{f}}=\frac{1.125}{6.76}=0.166\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

## 3. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

The maximum bending moment lies at the column face as shown in Figure 26.


Figure 26: Critical section of moment
For two way footing slab, moment may be reduced by $85 \%$, then the critical moment is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
M=0.85 q_{o} B \frac{c^{2}}{2} \\
M=0.85 \times 0.166 \times 2.6 \frac{1.05^{2}}{2}=0.202[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.202}{2.6}}=0.214[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.214[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section. The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.45 \sqrt{\frac{2.6}{0.202}}=1.61
$$

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=1.532, f_{c}=4.0\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=185$

## 4. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

The required area of steel reinforcement per meter $A_{s}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s}=\frac{M}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s}=\frac{0.202}{185 \times 0.45}=0.002426\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 2.6 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s}=24.26\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 2.6 \mathrm{~m}\right]=9.33\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $5 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ in both directions

## 5. Check for punching shear

The critical punching shear section lies on a perimeter at a distance $d / 2=0.225[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown in Figure 27.


Figure 27: Critical section for punching shear

## Geometry (Figure 27)

Effective depth of the section
Column side
Area of critical punching shear section

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& a=b=0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& A_{p}=(a+d)^{2}=0.9025\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Perimeter of critical punching shear section $\quad b_{o}=4(a+d)=3.8[\mathrm{~m}]$

## Loads and stresses

Column load
Soil pressure under the column
Main value of shear strength for concrete C 250

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P=1.125[\mathrm{MN}] \\
& q_{o}=0.166\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{c p}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
Q_{p}=1.125-0.166 \times 0.9025=0.98[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d} \\
q_{p}=\frac{0.98}{3.8 \times 0.45}=0.573\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{0.5}{0.5}\right) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{p}=0.573\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for punching shear.
Figure 28 shows the footing dimensions and reinforcement.


## Example 18: Design of a square isolated footing of column $\mathbf{0 . 3 0 \times 0 . 6 0}\left[\mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$

Design a square isolated footing of column $0.30 \times 0.60\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ reinforced by $6 \Phi 19$, carrying a load of $p$ $=1260[\mathrm{kN}]$. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=165\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=1.25[\mathrm{~m}]$ and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$, Figure 29.


The design is conducted in steps as follows:

## 1. Determining footing dimensions

$$
\begin{gathered}
P_{T}=\frac{P}{\left(1-\frac{\gamma_{a} D_{f}}{q_{\text {all }}}\right)} \\
P_{T}=\frac{1260}{\left(1-\frac{20 \times 1.25}{165}\right)}=1485[\mathrm{kN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{f}=\frac{P_{T}}{q_{\text {all }}}=\frac{1485}{165}=9.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
\text { take } A_{f}=3.0 \times 3.0=9.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \text { square footing }
\end{gathered}
$$

## 2. Computing the contact pressure under the footing $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{o}}$

$$
q_{o}=\frac{P}{A_{f}}=\frac{1.26}{9.0}=0.14\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

## 3. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

The maximum bending moment lies at the column face in $y$-direction as shown in Figure 30.


Figure 30: Critical section of moment in $y$-direction
For two way footing slab, moment may be reduced by $85 \%$, then the critical moment is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{y}=0.85 q_{o} L \frac{c_{1}^{2}}{2} \\
M_{y}=0.85 \times 0.14 \times 3.0 \frac{1.35^{2}}{2}=0.325[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{y}}{L}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.325}{3.0}}=0.252[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.252[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section. The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.45 \sqrt{\frac{3.0}{0.325}}=1.37
$$

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=1.387, f_{c}=4.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=183$

## Solved Examples

## 4. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

The required area of steel reinforcement per meter $A_{s y}$ in $y$ - direction is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s y}=\frac{M_{y}}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s y}=\frac{0.325}{183 \times 0.45}=0.003947\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s y}=39.47\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right]=13.16\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $5 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}=14.2\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
The critical section of moment in $x$-direction is shown in Figure 31. The maximum moment in $x$ direction is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{x}=0.85 q_{o} B \frac{c_{2}^{2}}{2} \\
M_{x}=0.85 \times 0.14 \times 3.0 \frac{1.2^{2}}{2}=0.257[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$



Figure 31: Critical section of moment in $x$-direction
The required area of steel reinforcement per meter $A_{s x}$ in $x$ - direction is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s x}=\frac{M_{x}}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s x}=\frac{0.257}{183 \times 0.45}=0.003121\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s x}=31.21\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right]=10.40\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $5 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}=14.2\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$

## 5. Check for punching shear

The critical punching shear section lies on a perimeter at a distance $d / 2=0.225[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown inFigure 32.


Figure 32: Critical section for punching shear

## Geometry (Figure 32)

Effective depth of the section
Column width
Column length
Area of critical punching shear section

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& a=0.3[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& b=0.6[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& A_{p}=(a+d)(b+d)=0.79\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Perimeter of critical punching shear section $\quad b_{o}=2(a+d+2 d)=3.6[\mathrm{~m}]$

## Loads and stresses

Column load

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P=1.26[\mathrm{MN}] \\
& q_{o}=0.14\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{c p}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
Q_{p}=1.26-0.14 \times 0.79=1.15[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d} \\
q_{p}=\frac{1.15}{3.6 \times 0.45}=0.71\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{0.3}{0.6}\right) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{p}=0.71\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for punching shear.
Figure 33 shows the footing dimensions and reinforcement.

## Solved Examples



## Example 19: Design of a rectangular isolated footing

Design a rectangular isolated footing of column $0.30 \times 0.90\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ reinforced by $8 \Phi 19$, carrying a load of $P=1500[\mathrm{kN}]$. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=190\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=1.6[\mathrm{~m}]$ and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$, Figure 34.


Figure 34: Rectangular isolated footing
The design is conducted in steps as follows:

## 1. Determining footing dimensions

$$
\begin{gathered}
P_{T}=\frac{P}{\left(1-\frac{\gamma_{a} D_{f}}{q_{a l l}}\right)} \\
P_{T}=\frac{1500}{\left(1-\frac{20 \times 1.6}{190}\right)}=1804[\mathrm{kN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
A_{f}=\frac{P_{T}}{q_{\text {all }}}=\frac{1804}{190}=9.49\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

$$
\text { take } A_{f}=3.4 \times 2.8=9.52\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \text { rectangular footing }
$$

The area is chosen to be a rectangular with an offset of $c=1.25[\mathrm{~m}]$ in both sides.

## 2. Computing the contact pressure under the footing $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{o}}$

$$
q_{o}=\frac{P}{A_{f}}=\frac{1.50}{9.52}=0.158\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

## Solved Examples

## 3. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

The maximum bending moment lies at the column face in $y$-direction as shown in Figure 35.


Figure 35: Critical section of moment in $y$-direction
For two way footing slab, moment may be reduced by $85 \%$, then the critical moment is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{y}=0.85 q_{o} L \frac{c_{1}^{2}}{2} \\
M_{y}=0.85 \times 0.158 \times 3.4 \frac{1.25^{2}}{2}=0.357[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{y}}{L}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.357}{3.4}}=0.25[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.25[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section. The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.45 \sqrt{\frac{3.4}{0.357}}=1.39
$$

## Solved Examples

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=1.387, f_{c}=4.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=183$

## 4. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

The required area of steel reinforcement per meter $A_{s y}$ in $y$-direction is:

$$
A_{s y}=\frac{M_{y}}{k_{2} d}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{s y}=\frac{0.357}{183 \times 0.45}=0.004335\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 3.4 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
& A_{s y}=43.35\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 3.4 \mathrm{~m}\right]=12.75\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Chosen steel $5 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}=14.2\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
The critical section of moment in $x$-direction is shown in Figure 36. The maximum moment in $x$ direction is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{x}=0.85 q_{o} B \frac{c_{2}^{2}}{2} \\
M_{x}=0.85 \times 0.158 \times 2.8 \frac{1.25^{2}}{2}=0.294[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$



Figure 36: Critical section of moment in $x$-direction
The required area of steel reinforcement per meter $A_{s x}$ in $x$ - direction is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s x}=\frac{M_{x}}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s x}=\frac{0.294}{183 \times 0.45}=0.003570\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 2.8 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s x}=35.70\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 2.8 \mathrm{~m}\right]=12.75\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $5 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}=14.2\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$

## 5. Check for punching shear

The critical punching shear section lies on a perimeter at a distance $d / 2=0.225[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown inFigure 37.


Figure 37: Critical section for punching shear

## Geometry (Figure 37)

Effective depth of the section
Column width
Column length
Area of critical punching shear section

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& a=0.3[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& b=0.9[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& A_{p}=(a+d)(b+d)=1.01\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
&-60-
\end{aligned}
$$

Perimeter of critical punching shear section $\quad b_{o}=2(a+d+2 d)=4.2[\mathrm{~m}]$

## Loads and stresses

Column load $\quad P=1.5[\mathrm{MN}]$
Soil pressure under the column $\quad q_{o}=0.158\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$
Main value of shear strength for concrete C $250 \quad q_{c p}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$

## Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
Q_{p}=1.5-0.158 \times 1.01=1.34[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d} \\
q_{p}=\frac{1.34}{4.2 \times 0.45}=0.71\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{0.3}{0.9}\right) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.75\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{\text {pall }}=0.75\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{p}=0.71\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for punching shear.
Figure 38 shows the footing dimensions and reinforcement.

## Solved Examples



Figure 38: Footing dimensions and reinforcement

## Example 20: Design of a footing subjected to an axial load and moment

Design a square isolated footing of column $0.50 \times 0.50\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ reinforced by $4 \Phi 19$, carrying a load of $P$ $=1500[\mathrm{kN}]$ and moment of $M=750[\mathrm{kN} . \mathrm{m}]$,Figure 39 .


Figure 39: Footing subjected to an axial load and moment
The design is conducted in steps as follows:

## 1. Computing the contact pressure under the footing $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{o}}$

Total moment about $y$-axis is given by (Figure 40):

$$
M_{t}=P \times e-M=1500 \times 0.5-750=0.0[\mathrm{KN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

A total moment $M_{t}=0.0[\mathrm{kN} . \mathrm{m}]$ leads to a uniform contact pressure at the base of the footing.
The contact pressure at the base of the footing is

$$
q_{o}=\frac{P}{A_{f}}=\frac{1.50}{9.0}=0.167\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$



Figure 40: Contact pressure under the base of the footing

## 2. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

The critical section of moment in $x$-direction is shown in Figure 41. For two way footing slab, moment may be reduced by $85 \%$. The maximum moment in $x$-direction is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{x}=0.85 q_{o} B \frac{c_{1}^{2}}{2} \\
M_{x}=0.85 \times 0.167 \times 3.0 \frac{1.75^{2}}{2}=0.652[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$



Figure 41: Critical section of moment in $x$-direction
From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{x}}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.652}{3.0}}=0.36[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.36[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.
The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.45 \sqrt{\frac{3.0}{0.652}}=0.965
$$

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=0.965, f_{c}=7.0\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=177$

## 3. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

The required area of steel reinforcement per meter $A_{s x}$ in $x$-direction is:

$$
A_{s x}=\frac{M_{x}}{k_{2} d}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{s x} & =\frac{0.652}{177 \times 0.45}=0.008186\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s x} & =81.86\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right]=27.29\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Chosen steel $10 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}=28.4\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
The maximum bending moment lies at the column face in $y$-direction as shown in Figure 42.


Figure 42: Critical section of moment in $y$-direction

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{y}=0.85 q_{o} L \frac{c_{2}{ }^{2}}{2} \\
M_{y}=0.85 \times 0.167 \times 3.0 \frac{1.25^{2}}{2}=0.333[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The required area of steel reinforcement per meter $A_{s y}$ in $y$-direction is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s y}=\frac{M_{y}}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s y}=\frac{0.333}{177 \times 0.45}=0.004181\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s y}=41.81\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right]=13.94\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $5 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}=14.2\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$

## Solved Examples

## 4. Check for punching shear

The critical punching shear section lies on a perimeter at a distance $d / 2=0.225[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown in Figure 43.


Figure 43: Critical section for punching shear

## Geometry (Figure 43)

Effective depth of the section
Column side
Area of critical punching shear section
Perimeter of critical punching shear section

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& a=b=0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& A_{p}=(a+d)^{2}=0.9025\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
& b_{o}=4(a+d)=3.8[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Loads and stresses

Column load
Soil pressure under the column
Main value of shear strength for concrete C 250

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P=1.5[\mathrm{MN}] \\
& q_{o}=0.167\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{c p}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{aligned}
Q_{p}= & P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
& -67-
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
Q_{p}=1.5-0.167 \times 0.9025=1.35[\mathrm{MN}]
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d} \\
q_{p}=\frac{1.35}{3.8 \times 0.45}=0.79\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{0.5}{0.5}\right) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{p}=0.79\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for punching shear.
Figure 44 shows the footing dimensions and reinforcement.

## Solved Examples


a)Section I-I


Figure 44: Footing dimensions and

## Solved Examples

## Example 21: Design of a circular footing for a circular column

Design a circular footing for a column $0.6[\mathrm{~m}]$ in diameter, reinforced by $16 \Phi 16$ and carrying a load of $1500[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown in Figure 45 . The allowable soil pressure $q_{\text {all }}=185\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=$ $1.75[\mathrm{~m}]$ and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.


Figure 45: Circular footing for a circular column
The design is conducted in steps as follows:

## 1. Determining the footing diameter $\boldsymbol{D}$

$$
\begin{gathered}
P_{T}=\frac{P}{\left(1-\frac{\gamma_{a} \times D_{f}}{q_{a l l}}\right)} \\
P_{T}=\frac{1500}{\left(1-\frac{20 \times 1.75}{185}\right)}=1850[\mathrm{kN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
A_{f}=\frac{P_{T}}{q_{\text {all }}}=\frac{1850}{185}=10\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

$$
\text { take } D=3.60[\mathrm{~m}], A_{f}=(\pi / 4) \times(3.60)^{2}=10.179\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

## 2. Computing the contact pressure under the footing $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{o}}$

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the footing will be uniform, it's given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{P}{A_{f}}=\frac{1.5}{10.179}=0.147\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

## 3. Determining the maximum bending moment

The maximum bending moment acting on the footing occurs at the side face of the column in $y-y$ direction due to the shaded area shown in Figure 46.

Area of the shaded part:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s h}=0.25\left(\frac{\pi D^{2}}{4}-\frac{\pi d^{2}}{4}\right) \\
A_{s h}=0.25\left(\frac{\pi 3.6^{2}}{4}-\frac{\pi 0.6^{2}}{4}\right)=2.474\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$



Figure 46: Load and bending moment acting on the footing
Distance of the centroid of the shaded area from the face of the column is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
S=0.3\left(\frac{D^{2}+d^{2}+D d}{D+d}\right)-0.5 d \\
S=0.3\left(\frac{3.6^{2}+0.6^{2}+3.6 \times 0.6}{3.6+0.6}\right)-0.5 \times 0.6=0.806[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Load acting on the shaded area is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q=q_{o} A_{s h} \\
Q=0.147 \times 2.47=0.364[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The maximum bending moment $M_{\max }$ is given by:

$$
M_{\max }=Q S
$$

- 72 -

$$
M_{\max }=0.364 \times 0.806=0.293[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

Equivalent breadth of the shaded area may be taken as the average shaded circularly perimeter from the column and the footing.

$$
\begin{gathered}
B=0.5\left(\frac{\pi D}{4}+\frac{\pi d}{4}\right) \\
B=0.5\left(\frac{\pi 3.6}{4}+\frac{\pi 0.6}{4}\right)=1.649[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## 4. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.293}{1.649}}=0.323[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.323[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t=0.5[\mathrm{~m}]$.

## 5. Check for punching shear

The critical punching shear section lies on a perimeter at a distance $d_{f} / 2=0.225[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown in Figure 47.

## Geometry (Figure 47)

Effective depth of the section
Column diameter
Area of critical punching shear section
Perimeter of critical punching shear section

## Loads and stresses

Column load
Soil pressure under the column
Main value of shear strength for concrete C 250

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d_{f}=0.45[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& d=0.6[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& A_{p}=\pi\left(d+d_{f}\right)^{2} / 4=0.866\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
& b_{o}=\pi\left(d+d_{f}\right)=3.3[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P=1.5[\mathrm{MN}] \\
& q_{o}=0.147\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{c p}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 47: Critical section for punching shear

## Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
Q_{p}=1.5-0.147 \times 0.866=1.373[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d_{f}} \\
q_{p}=\frac{1.373}{3.3 \times 0.45}=0.924\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=(0.5+1) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \approx q_{p}=0.924\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for punching shear.

## Determining the depth required to resist punching shear $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{p}}$

$$
d_{p}=\frac{1.373}{3.3 \times 0.9}=0.462[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Take $d=0.5[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.462[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t=0.55[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.

The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d=0.5[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.5 \sqrt{\frac{1.649}{0.293}}=1.19
$$

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=1.19, f_{c}=6.0\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=179$

## 6. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

Minimum area of steel reinforcement $A_{s \text { min }}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 55 \times 100=8.25\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ Take $A_{\text {smin }}=5 \Phi 16=10.053\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$

The required area of steel reinforcement $A_{s}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s}=\frac{M_{\max }}{k_{2} d_{f}} \\
A_{s}=\frac{0.293}{179 \times 0.5}=0.003274\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 1.649 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s}=32.74\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 1.649 \mathrm{~m}\right]=19.85\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $7 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}=19.90\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
Figure 48 shows the footing dimensions and reinforcement.

a) Section $x-x$


Figure 48: Footing dimensions and reinforcement

## Solved Examples

## Example 22: Design of a rectangular combined footing for two interior columns (1)

Design a combined footing for two equal columns, each of $0.50 \times 0.50$ [ m$]$, reinforced by $4 \Phi 19$, carrying a load of $P=1500[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown in Figure 49. The distance center to center of columns is $3.0[\mathrm{~m}]$. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=210\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.


Figure 49: Rectangular combined footing

## 1. Determining footing sides $L$ and $B$

Resultant of loads $R$ at the ground surface level is given by:

$$
R=2 P=2 \times 1500=3000[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Resultant of total loads $R_{T}$ at the foundation level is given by:

$$
R_{T}=\frac{R}{\left(1-\frac{\gamma_{a} D_{f}}{q_{a l l}}\right)}
$$

$$
R_{T}=\frac{3000}{\left(1-\frac{20 \times 2.0}{210}\right)}=3705.88[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
A_{f}=\frac{R_{T}}{q_{\text {all }}}=\frac{3705.88}{210}=17.65\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

take $A_{f}=3.0 \times 6.0=18.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ rectangular combined footing

## 2. Computing the contact pressure

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the footing will be uniform. It is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{3000}{3 \times 6}=166.67\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.167\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, the rectangular footing is treated as a beam footing. The contact pressure per meter is given by:

$$
q=q_{o} B=0.167 \times 3.0=0.5[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

Figure 50 shows the load diagram and moment diagram for the beam footing.

## 3. Determining the maximum moment $M_{\max }$

From Figure 50, the maximum bending moment occurs at the face of the column which is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{\max }=q \frac{c_{1}^{2}}{2} \\
M_{\max }=0.5 \times \frac{1.25^{2}}{2}=0.391[\mathrm{MN.m}]
\end{gathered}
$$



Figure 50: Contact pressure, bending moment and critical section

## 4. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.391}{3.0}}=0.28[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.28[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.
The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.45 \sqrt{\frac{3.0}{0.391}}=1.25
$$

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=1.27, f_{c}=5.0\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=182$

## 5. Check for punching shear

The critical punching shear section lies on a perimeter at a distance $d / 2=0.225[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown in Figure 51.


Figure 51: Critical section for punching shear

## Geometry (Figure 51)

Effective depth of the section
Column side
Area of critical punching shear section
Perimeter of critical punching shear section

## Loads and stresses

Column load
Soil pressure under the column
Main value of shear strength for concrete C 250

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& a=b=0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& A_{p}=(a+d)^{2}=0.9025\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
& b_{o}=4(a+d)=3.8[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P=1.5[\mathrm{MN}] \\
& q_{o}=0.167\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{c p}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
Q_{p}=1.5-0.167 \times 0.9025=1.35[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d} \\
q_{p}=\frac{1.35}{3.8 \times 0.45}=0.79\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{0.5}{0.5}\right) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{p}=0.79\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for punching shear.

## 6. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

Minimum area of steel reinforcement $A_{\text {smin }}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 50 \times 100=7.5\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ Take $A_{s \text { min }}=5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.

The required area of steel reinforcement $A_{s}$ is:

$$
A_{s x b}=\frac{M_{\max }}{k_{2} d}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{s x b} & =\frac{0.391}{182 \times 0.45}=0.004774\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s x b} & =47.74\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right]=15.91\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Chosen steel $6 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}=17.0\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$

## Solved Examples

## 7. Computing the steel reinforcement in transverse direction

The transverse bending moment may be approximately determined at each column by assuming that the column load is distributed outward at $45\left[{ }^{\circ}\right]$ from the face of the column over an appropriate area as shown in Figure 52. Both sides of this area should not be greater than the breadth of the footing.

a) Elevation

$$
2 \times 0.5+0.5=1.5[\mathrm{~m}]
$$



Figure 52: Sections for determining transverse moments
Side of the loaded area $L_{T}$ is given by:

$$
L_{T}=a+2 t=0.5+2 \times 0.5=1.5[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

The transverse bending moment $M_{T}$ under the column is given by:

$$
M_{T}=\frac{P}{8} \frac{\left(L_{T}-a\right)^{2}}{L_{T}}=\frac{1.5}{8} \frac{(1.5-0.5)^{2}}{1.5}=0.125[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

The required area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction under the column $A_{s T}$ is:

$$
A_{s T}=\frac{M_{T}}{k_{2} d}
$$

## Solved Examples

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{s T} & =\frac{0.125}{182 \times 0.45}=0.001526\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 1.5 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s T} & =15.26\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 1.5 \mathrm{~m}\right]=10.17\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Chosen steel $6 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=12.10\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.
The details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing are shown in Figure 53.

a) Section $a-a$

b) Plan

Figure 53: Details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing

## Solved Examples

## Example 23: Design of a rectangular combined footing for two interior columns (2)

Design a combined footing for two equal columns, each of $0.50 \times 0.30$ [ m ], reinforced by $4 \Phi 19$, carrying a load of $P=1000[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown in Figure 54. The distance center to center of columns is $4.5[\mathrm{~m}]$. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=150\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=1.5[\mathrm{~m}]$ and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.



Figure 54: Rectangular combined footing

## 1. Determining footing sides $L$ and $B$

Resultant of loads $R$ at the ground surface level is given by:

$$
R=2 P=2 \times 1000=2000[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Resultant of total loads $R_{T}$ at the foundation level is given by:

$$
R_{T}=\frac{R}{\left(1-\frac{\gamma_{a} D_{f}}{q_{a l l}}\right)}
$$

$$
R_{T}=\frac{2000}{\left(1-\frac{20 \times 1.5}{150}\right)}=2500[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
A_{f}=\frac{R_{T}}{q_{\text {all }}}=\frac{2500}{150}=16.67\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

$$
\text { take } A_{f}=2.6 \times 6.5=16.9\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \text { rectangular combined footing }
$$

## 2. Computing the contact pressure

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the footing will be uniform. It is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{2000}{2.6 \times 6.5}=118.34\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.118\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, the rectangular footing is treated as a beam footing. The contact pressure per meter is given by:

$$
q=q_{o} B=0.118 \times 2.6=0.308[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

Figure 55 shows the load diagram and moment diagram for the beam footing.

## 3. Determining the maximum moment $M_{\text {max }}$

From Figure 55, the maximum bending moment occurs at the face of the column which is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{c 1}=q \frac{c^{2}}{2} \\
M_{c 1}=0.308 \times \frac{1.0^{2}}{2}=0.154[\mathrm{MN.m}] \\
M_{\max }=P \frac{S}{2}-q \frac{(L / 2)^{2}}{2} \\
M_{\max }=1 \times \frac{4.5}{2}-0.308 \times \frac{(6.5 / 2)^{2}}{2}=0.623[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$



Figure 55: Contact pressure, bending moment and critical section

## 4. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.623}{2.6}}=0.37[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.37[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.
The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.45 \sqrt{\frac{2.6}{0.623}}=0.919
$$

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=0.968, f_{c}=7.0\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=177$

## 5. Check for punching shear

The critical punching shear section lies on a perimeter at a distance $d / 2=0.225[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown in Figure 56.


Figure 56: Critical section for punching shear

## Geometry (Figure 56)

Effective depth of the section
Column side
Area of critical punching shear section
Perimeter of critical punching shear section

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& a=0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \text { and } b=0.3[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& A_{p}=(a+d)(b+d)=0.7125\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
& b_{o}=2(a+b+2 d)=3.4[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Loads and stresses

Column load

$$
P=1.0[\mathrm{MN}]
$$

Soil pressure under the column $\quad q_{o}=0.118\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$
Main value of shear strength for concrete C $250 \quad q_{c p}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$

## Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
Q_{p}=1.0-0.118 \times 0.7125=0.916[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d} \\
q_{p}=\frac{0.916}{3.4 \times 0.45}=0.6\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{0.5}{0.5}\right) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{p}=0.6\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for punching shear.

## 6. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

Minimum area of steel reinforcement $A_{\text {smin }}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 50 \times 100=7.5\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ Take $A_{\text {smin }}=5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.

The required area of steel reinforcement $A_{s x b}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s x b}=\frac{M_{c 1}}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s x b}=\frac{0.154}{177 \times 0.45}=0.00193\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 2.6 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s x b}=19.33\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 2.6 \mathrm{~m}\right]=7.44\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $5 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$

The required area of steel reinforcement $A_{s x t}$ is:

$$
A_{s x t}=\frac{M_{\max }}{k_{2} d}
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s x t}=\frac{0.623}{177 \times 0.45}=0.00782\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 2.6 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s x t}=78.22\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 2.6 \mathrm{~m}\right]=30.08\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $8 \Phi 22 / \mathrm{m}=30.4\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$

## 7. Computing the steel reinforcement in transverse direction

The transverse bending moment may be approximately determined at each column by assuming that the column load is distributed outward at $45\left[{ }^{\circ}\right]$ from the face of the column over an appropriate area as shown in Figure 57. Both sides of this area should not be greater than the breadth of the footing.

a) Elevation
$\xrightarrow{\bullet} L_{T}==1.5[\mathrm{~m}]$


Figure 57: Sections for determining transverse moments
Side of the loaded area $L_{T}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
L_{T}=a+2 t= & 0.5+2 \times 0.5=1.5[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& -90-
\end{aligned}
$$

Side of the loaded area $B_{T}$ is given by:

$$
B_{T}=b+2 t=0.3+2 \times 0.5=1.3[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

The transverse bending moment $M_{T}$ under the column is given by:

$$
M_{T}=\frac{P}{8} \frac{\left(B_{T}-b\right)^{2}}{B_{T}}=\frac{1.0}{8} \frac{(1.3-0.3)^{2}}{1.3}=0.096[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

The required area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction under the column $A_{S T}$ is:

$$
A_{s T}=\frac{M_{T}}{k_{2} d}
$$

$$
A_{s T}=12.08\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 1.5 \mathrm{~m}\right]=8.05\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
$$

Chosen steel $5 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=10.10\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.
The details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing are shown in Figure 58.

## Solved Examples


a) Section $a-a$

b) Plan

Figure 58: Details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing

## Solved Examples

## Example 24: Design of a rectangular combined footing for two edge columns

Design a rectangular combined footing for two equal edge columns, each carrying a load of $P=1125$ $[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown in Figure 59. Column sides are $0.50 \times 0.50\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ while column reinforcement is $4 \Phi 19$. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=210\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=1.5[\mathrm{~m}]$ and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.


Figure 59: Combined rectangular footing

## 1. Determining footing sides $L$ and $B$

Resultant of loads $R$ at the ground surface level is given by:

$$
R=2 P=2 \times 1125=2250[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Allowable net soil pressure $q_{\text {net }}$ is given by:

$$
q_{\text {net }}=q_{\text {all }}-\gamma_{a} D_{f}=210-20 \times 1.5=180\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
A_{f}=\frac{R}{q_{\text {net }}}=\frac{2250}{180}=12.5\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

$$
\text { take } A_{f}=2.5 \times 5.0=12.5\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \text { rectangular combined footing }
$$

## 2. Computing the contact pressure

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the footing will be uniform. It is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{2250}{12.5}=180\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.18\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, the rectangular footing is treated as a beam footing. The contact pressure per meter is given by:

$$
q=q_{o} B=0.18 \times 2.5=0.45[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

Figure 60 shows the load diagram and moment diagram for the beam footing.

## 3. Determining the maximum moment $M_{\max }$

From Figure 60, the maximum bending moment in the longitudinal direction occurs at the middle of the footing which is:

$$
M_{\max }=P\left(\frac{l}{2}-c\right)-q \frac{l^{2}}{8}=1.125\left(\frac{5.0}{2}-0.25\right)-0.45 \frac{5.0^{2}}{8}=1.125[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$



Bending moment diagram
Figure 60: Contact pressure, bending moment and critical sections

## 4. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

## Solved Examples

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{1.125}{2.5}}=0.51[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.55[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.51[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.

## 5. Check for punching shear

The critical punching shear section lies on a perimeter at a distance $d / 2=0.275[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown in Figure 61.


Figure 61: Critical section for punching shear

## Geometry (Figure 61)

Effective depth of the section
Column side
Area of critical punching shear section
Perimeter of critical punching shear section

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d=0.55[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& a=b=0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& A_{p}=(a+d / 2)(b+d)=0.81\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
& b_{o}=2(a+d / 2)+(b+d)=2.6[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Loads and stresses

Column load

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P=1.125[\mathrm{MN}] \\
& q_{o}=0.18\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{c p}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Soil pressure under the column
Main value of shear strength for concrete C 250

## Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
Q_{p}=1.125-0.18 \times 0.81=0.98[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d} \\
q_{p}=\frac{0.98}{2.6 \times 0.55}=0.69\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p a l l}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{0.5}{0.5}\right) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{p}=0.69\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for punching shear.

## 6. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

Minimum area of steel reinforcement $A_{\text {smin }}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 60 \times 100=9.0\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ Take $A_{s \text { min }}=5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.

The required area of steel reinforcement $A_{s}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s x t}=\frac{M_{\max }}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s x t}=\frac{1.125}{172 \times 0.55}=0.011892\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 2.5 \mathrm{~m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
A_{s x t}=118.92\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 2.5 \mathrm{~m}\right]=47.57\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
$$

Chosen steel $13 \Phi 22 / \mathrm{m}=49.4\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$

## 7. Computing the steel reinforcement in transverse direction

The transverse bending moment may be approximately determined at each column by assuming that the column load is distributed outward at 45 [ ${ }^{\circ}$ ] from the face of the column over an appropriate area as shown in Figure 62. Both sides of this area should not be greater than the breadth of the footing.


Figure 62: sections for determining transverse moments
Length of the loaded area $L_{T}$ is given by:

$$
L_{T}=a+2 t=0.5+2 \times 0.6=1.7[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Breadth of the loaded area $B_{T}$ is given by:

$$
B_{T}=a+t=0.5+0.6=1.1[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Distributed load $P_{w}$ under the column is:

$$
P_{w}=\frac{P}{L_{T} B_{T}}=\frac{1.125}{1.7 \times 1.1}=0.602\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

The transverse bending moment $M_{T}$ under the column is given by:

$$
M_{T}=P_{w} B_{T} \frac{t^{2}}{2}=0.602 \times 1.1 \frac{0.6^{2}}{2}=0.119[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

The required area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction under the column $A_{s T}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s T}=\frac{M_{T}}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s T}=\frac{0.119}{172 \times 0.55}=0.001258\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 1.1 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s T}=12.58\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 1.1 \mathrm{~m}\right]=11.44\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $6 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=12.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.
The details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing are shown in Figure 63.

a) Section I-I

b) Plan

Figure 63: Details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing

## Solved Examples

## Example 25: Design of a rectangular combined footing for two unequal columns

Design a rectangular combined footing for an exterior column $C 1$ of a load of $1050[\mathrm{kN}]$ and an interior column $C 2$ of a load of $1800[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown in Figure 64. $C 1$ is $0.50 \times 0.50\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ and reinforced by $6 \Phi 22$, while column $C 2$ is $0.60 \times 0.50\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ and reinforced by $10 \Phi 22$. The allowable soil pressure $q_{\text {all }}=185\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=1.90[\mathrm{~m}]$. and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.

Ground surface


Figure 64: Combined rectangular footing

## 1. Determining point of application of the resultant force

Resultant force $R$ equals:

$$
R=P_{1}+P_{2}=1050+1800=2850[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Take the moment about $C_{1}$ to get the distance $S$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
P_{2} l=R S \\
1800 \times 4.75=2850 \times S \\
S=3.0[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## 2. Determining footing sides $L$ and $B$

$$
L=2 X_{p}=2(0.25+S)=2(0.25+3.0)=6.5[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Allowable net soil pressure $q_{\text {net }}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {net }}=q_{\text {all }}-\gamma_{a} D_{f}=185-20 \times 1.9=147\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
-100-
\end{gathered}
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
A_{f}=\frac{R}{q_{\text {net }}}=\frac{2850}{147}=19.39\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

take $A_{f}=6.5 \times 3.0=19.50\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ rectangular combined footing, as shown in Figure 65.


Figure 65: The combined rectangular ribbed footing with property line and column loads

## 3. Computing the contact pressure

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the footing will be uniform. It is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{2850}{19.5}=146.15\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.146\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, the rectangular footing is treated as a beam footing. The contact pressure per meter under the footing is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q=q_{o} B=0.146 \times 3.0=0.438[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}] \\
-101-
\end{gathered}
$$

## 4. Determining the maximum moment $M_{\text {max }}$

Figure 66 shows the load diagram, bending moment and shear force diagram for the beam footing.


Figure 66: Load, shear force and bending moment diagrams with critical sections

The critical bending moments acting on column sides are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{C l}=0.438 \times(0.5)^{2} / 2-1.05 \times 0.25=-0.208[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}] \\
M_{C 2}=0.438 \times(1.5)^{2} / 2=0.493[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The maximum bending moment occurs at the position of zero shear. Point of zero shear locates at $l_{z}$ from the outer face of the footing.

$$
\begin{gathered}
P_{1}=q l_{z} \\
1.05=0.438 \times l_{z} \\
l_{z}=2.4[\mathrm{~m}] \\
M_{\text {max }}=q\left(l_{z}\right)^{2} / 2-P_{1}\left(l_{z}-C_{1}\right)=0.438 \times(2.4)^{2} / 2-1.05(2.4-0.25)=-0.996[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## 5. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $d_{m}$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.996}{3}}=0.44[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.44[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t=0.5[\mathrm{~m}]$.

## 6. Check for punching shear

The critical punching shear section lies on a perimeter at a distance $d / 2=0.225[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown in Figure 67.

## Column C1

## Geometry (Figure 67)

Effective depth of the section
Column side
Area of critical punching shear section
Perimeter of critical punching shear section

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& a=b=0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& A_{p}=(a+d / 2)(b+d)=0.689\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
& b_{o}=2(a+d / 2)+(b+d)=2.4[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Loads and stresses

Column load
Soil pressure under the column
Main value of shear strength for concrete C 250

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P=1.05[\mathrm{MN}] \\
& q_{o}=0.146\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{c p}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
Q_{p}=1.05-0.146 \times 0.689=0.949[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d} \\
q_{p}=\frac{0.949}{2.4 \times 0.45}=0.879\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{0.5}{0.5}\right) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{p}=0.879\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for punching shear.

## Column C2

## Geometry (Figure 67)

Effective depth of the section
Column side
Area of critical punching shear section
Perimeter of critical punching shear section

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& a=0.6[\mathrm{~m}] \text { and } b=0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& A_{p}=(a+d)(b+d)=0.998\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
& b_{o}=2(a+d)+2(b+d)=4.0[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Loads and stresses

Column load
Soil pressure under the column
Main value of shear strength for concrete C 250

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P=1.8[\mathrm{MN}] \\
& q_{o}=0.146\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{c p}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
Q_{p}=1.8-0.146 \times 0.998=1.654[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d} \\
q_{p}=\frac{1.654}{4.0 \times 0.45}=0.92\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{0.5}{0.5}\right) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]<q_{p}=0.92\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is unsafe for punching shear.

## Determining the depth required to resist punching shear $\boldsymbol{d}_{p}$

$$
d_{p}=\frac{1.654}{4.0 \times 0.9}=0.46[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Take $d=0.50[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.46[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t=0.55[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.


Figure 67: Critical sections for punching shear

## 7. Computing the area of steel reinforcement in longitudinal direction $\boldsymbol{A}_{\boldsymbol{s}}$

Minimum area of steel reinforcement $A_{\text {smin }}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 55 \times 100=8.25\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ Take $A_{s \text { min }}=5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.

The required area of steel reinforcement in longitudinal direction $A_{s}$ is show in Table 4:
Table 4: Determination of tension reinforcement in longitudinal direction

| Position | Breadth <br> $B[\mathrm{~m}]$ | Moment <br> $M[\mathrm{MN.m}]$ | Calculated $A_{s}$ <br> $A_{s}=M /\left(k_{2} \cdot d\right) / B$ <br> $\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ | Chosen <br> reinforcement <br> $A_{s}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $A_{s C 1}=A_{s C 3}$ | 3.0 | -0.208 | 8.06 | $5 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=10.1 \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ |
| $A_{s m a x}$ | 3.0 | -0.996 | 38.61 | $11 \Phi 22 / \mathrm{m}=41.8 \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ |
| $A_{s C 2}$ | 3.0 | 0.315 | 12.21 | $7 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=14.1 \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ |

## Solved Examples

## 8. Computing the area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction $\boldsymbol{A}_{\boldsymbol{s} T}$

The transverse bending moment may be approximately determined at each column by assuming that the column load is distributed outward at $45\left[{ }^{\circ}\right]$ from the face of the column over an appropriate area as shown in Figure 68. Both sides of this area should not be greater than the breadth of the footing.

## Column $C_{1}$

Length of the loaded area $L_{T 1}$ is given by:

$$
L_{T 1}=a_{1}+t=0.5+0.55=1.05[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Breadth of the loaded area $B_{T 1}$ is given by:

$$
B_{T 1}=b_{1}+2 t=0.5+2 \times 0.55=1.6[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

The loaded area $A_{T 1}$ is given by:

$$
A_{T 1}=L_{T 1} \times B_{T 1}=1.05 \times 1.6=1.68\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

The contact pressure under the loaded area $P_{W 1}$ is given by:

$$
P_{w 1}=\frac{P_{1}}{A_{T 1}}=\frac{1.05}{1.68}=0.625\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

The transverse bending moment $M_{T 1}$ under the column is given by:

$$
M_{T 1}=P_{w 1}\left(\frac{B_{T 1}-b_{1}}{2}\right)^{2} L_{T 1} \times \frac{1}{2}=0.625 \times\left(\frac{1.6-0.5}{2}\right)^{2} \times 1.05 \times \frac{1}{2}=0.099[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

The required area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction under the column $A_{s T 1}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s T 1}=\frac{M_{T 1}}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s T 1}=\frac{0.099}{172 \times 0.5}=0.001154\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 1.05 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s T 1}=11.54\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 1.05 \mathrm{~m}\right]=10.99\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $6 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=12.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$

b) Plan

Figure 68: sections of transverse moment

## Column $C_{2}$

Length of the loaded area $L_{T 2}$ is given by:

$$
L_{T 2}=a_{2}+2 t=0.6+(2 \times 0.55)=1.7[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Breadth of the loaded area $B_{T 2}$ is given by:

$$
B_{T 2}=b_{2}+2 t=0.5+(2 \times 0.55)=1.6[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

The loaded area $A_{T 2}$ is given by:

$$
A_{T 2}=L_{T 2} \times B_{T 2}=1.7 \times 1.6=2.72\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

The contact pressure under the loaded area $P_{W 2}$ is given by:

$$
P_{w 2}=\frac{P_{2}}{A_{T 2}}=\frac{1.8}{2.72}=0.662\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

The transverse bending moment $M_{T 2}$ under the column is given by:

$$
M_{T 2}=P_{w 2}\left(\frac{B_{T 2}-b_{2}}{2}\right)^{2} L_{T 2} \times \frac{1}{2}=0.662 \times\left(\frac{1.6-0.5}{2}\right)^{2} \times 1.7 \times \frac{1}{2}=0.17[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

The required area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction under the column $A_{s T}$ is:

$$
A_{s T 2}=\frac{M_{T 2}}{k_{2} d}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{s T 2}=\frac{0.17}{172 \times 0.5}=0.001977\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 1.7 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
& A_{s T}=19.77\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 1.7 \mathrm{~m}\right]=11.63\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Chosen steel $6 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=12.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
The details of reinforcement in plan and section $i-i$ through the footing are shown in Figure 69.

Solved Examples

a) Section I-I

b) Plan with transverse reinforcement

Figure 69: Footing dimensions and reinforcement

## Solved Examples

## Example 26: Design of a combined rectangular ribbed footing

Design a rectangular footing for an exterior column $C_{1}$ of a load of $1200[\mathrm{kN}]$ and an interior column $C_{2}$ of a load of $2250[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown in Figure 70. Column $C_{1}$ is $0.50 \times 0.65\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ and reinforced by $12 \Phi 19$, while column $C_{2}$ is $0.60 \times 0.65\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ and reinforced by $14 \Phi 19$. The allowable soil pressure $q_{\text {all }}$ $=180\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=1.8[\mathrm{~m}]$ and the average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=$ $20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$. The footing has an inverted T - section.


Figure 70: Plan of columns with property line and column loads

## 9. Determining point of application of the resultant force

Resultant force $R$ equals:

$$
R=P_{1}+P_{2}=1200+2250=3450[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Take the moment about $C_{1}$ to get the distance $S$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
P_{2} l=R S \\
2250 \times 5.75=3450 \times S \\
S=3.75[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## 10. Determining footing sides $L$ and $B$

$$
L=2(0.25+S)=2(0.25+3.75)=8.0[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Allowable net soil pressure $q_{\text {net }}$ is given by:

$$
q_{\text {net }}=q_{a l l}-\gamma_{a} D_{f}=180-20 \times 1.8=144\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
A_{f}=\frac{R}{q_{n e t}}=\frac{3450}{144}=23.96\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

take $A_{f}=8.0 \times 3.0=24.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ rectangular combined footing, as shown in Figure 71 .


Figure 71: The combined rectangular ribbed footing with property line and column loads

## 11. Computing the contact pressure

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the footing will be uniform. It is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{3450}{24}=143.75\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.144\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, the rectangular footing is treated as a beam footing with inverted T-section.
The contact pressure per meter under the footing is given by:

$$
q=q_{o} B=0.144 \times 3.0=0.431[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

## 12. Determining the maximum moment $M_{\max }$

Figure 72 shows the load diagram, bending moment and shear force diagram for the beam footing.

$-1.092[\mathrm{MN}]$


Figure 72: Load, shear force and bending moment diagrams with critical sections of the rib

The critical bending moments acting on column sides are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{C l}=0.431 \times(0.5)^{2} / 2-1.2 \times 0.25=-0.246[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}] \\
M_{C 2}=0.431 \times(1.7)^{2} / 2=0.623[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The maximum bending moment occurs at the position of zero shear. Point of zero shear locates at $l_{z}$ from the outer face of the footing.

$$
\begin{gathered}
P_{1}=q l_{z} \\
1.2=0.431 \times l_{z} \\
l_{z}=2.783[\mathrm{~m}] \\
M_{\max }=q\left(l_{z}\right)^{2} / 2-P_{1}\left(l_{z}-C_{1}\right)=0.431 \times(2.783)^{2} / 2-1.2(2.783-0.25)=-1.370[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## 13. Determining the depth of the rib $d$

## Determining the depth $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$ required to resist the longitudinal moment $\boldsymbol{M}_{\text {max }}$

The section of the footing is T - section with depth $d_{m}$ and breadth of flange $B_{T}$
$B_{T}$ is the least of:

$$
\begin{gathered}
B=3.0[\mathrm{~m}] \\
4 b=4 \times 0.5=2.0[\mathrm{~m}] \\
1 / 4 \text { Span }=5.2 / 4=1.3[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $B_{T}=1.3[\mathrm{~m}]$
From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B_{T}}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{1.37}{1.3}}=0.79[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.8[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.79[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t=0.85[\mathrm{~m}]$
Check for section capacity to resist maximum shear force $\boldsymbol{Q}_{\text {max }}$

The maximum critical shear section lies at a distance $d / 2=0.375[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the side face of the internal column.

Effective depth of the section

$$
\begin{aligned}
d & =0.8[\mathrm{~m}] \\
b & =0.65[\mathrm{~m}] \\
q_{c} & =0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{2} & =1.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Main value of shear strength for concrete C250
Max.value of shear strength for concrete C250
for maximum shear force $Q_{\max }$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q(x)=0.431 X-1.2 \\
X=6-0.3-0.4=5.3[\mathrm{~m}] \\
Q_{\max }=0.431 \times 5.3-1.2=1.086[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The shear stress $q$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q=\frac{Q_{\max }}{b d} \\
q=\frac{1.086}{0.65 \times 0.8}=2.09\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{2}=1.90\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Determining the depth $d_{s}$ required to resist the shear force $Q_{\text {max }}$

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{s}=\frac{Q_{\max }}{b q_{2}} \\
d_{s}=\frac{1.086}{0.65 \times 1.90}=0.88[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.95[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{s}=0.88[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t=1.0[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced T- section.

## 14. Determining the depth $d_{f}$ required to resist the transverse moment $M_{T}$

The maximum transverse bending moment $M_{T}$ lies at the rib face as shown in Figure 73. $M_{T}$ value is given by:

$$
M_{T}=q_{o} \times 1.0 \times(c)^{2} / 2=0.144 \times 1.0 \times(1.175)^{2} / 2=0.099[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$



Cross section of the footing


Part plane of the footing Figure 73: Critical section of transverse moment

The footing depth $d_{f}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{f}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{T}}{1.0[\mathrm{~m}]}} \\
d_{f}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.099}{1.0}}=0.242[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d_{f}=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>0.242[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t_{f}=0.5[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.
15. Computing the area of steel reinforcement in longitudinal direction $A_{s}$

At first, we should calculate the position of the neutral axis:

$$
k_{z}=\sqrt{\frac{30}{f_{c}(r+1)}}
$$

$f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=95\left[\mathrm{~kg} / \mathrm{cm}^{2}\right] \quad r=f_{s} / f_{c}=200 / 9.5=21[-]$

$$
\begin{gathered}
k_{z}=\sqrt{\frac{30}{95(21+1)}}=0.1198 \\
z=k_{z} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B_{T}}}=0.1198 \sqrt{\frac{1.37 \times 10^{7}}{130}}=38.89[\mathrm{~cm}]<t_{f}=50[\mathrm{~cm}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The neutral axis lies inside the slab footing, so the section is treated as rectangular section with $B_{T}$ and $d_{m}$ as shown in Figure 74.


Figure 74: T- section subjected to longitudinal moment $M_{\text {max }}$
Minimum area of steel reinforcement $A_{\text {smin }}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 50 \times 100=7.5\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ Take $A_{s \text { min }}=5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.

The required maximum area of steel reinforcement in longitudinal direction $A_{\text {smax }}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s \max }=\frac{M_{\max }}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s \max }=\frac{1.37}{172 \times 0.95}=0.00839\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]=83.9\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $18 \Phi 25=88.2\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right]$
The required area of steel reinforcement for sec. 2 in longitudinal direction $A_{s C 2}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s C 2}=\frac{M_{C 2}}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s C 2}=\frac{0.623}{172 \times 0.95}=0.003813\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]=38.13\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $8 \Phi 25=39.28\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right]$

## 16. Check for shear stress

The maximum critical shear section lies at a distance $d / 2=0.475[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the side face of the internal column.
for maximum shear force $Q_{\max }$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q(x)=0.431 X-1.2 \\
X=6-0.3-0.475=5.225[\mathrm{~m}] \\
Q_{\max }=0.431 \times 5.225-1.2=1.052[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The shear stress $q$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q=\frac{Q_{\max }}{b d} \\
q=\frac{1.052}{0.65 \times 0.95}=1.704\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{2}=1.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q=1.704\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{c}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The shear would be resisted using vertical stirrups and bent bars.

## Shear stress carried by stirrups

Using stirrups $5 \varphi 10 / \mathrm{m}, 4$ branches @ 200 [mm]

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{s s}=\frac{A_{s t} f_{s}}{b S} \\
q_{s s}=\frac{\left(4 \times 78.5 \times 10^{-6}\right) \times 200}{0.65 \times 0.2}=0.483\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Shear stress carried by bent bars

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{s b}=q_{s}-q_{s s}=1.254-0.483=0.771\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{s b}=\frac{A_{s b} f_{s}}{b d}(\sin \alpha+\cos \alpha) \\
-118-
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
0.771=\frac{A_{s b} \times 200}{0.65 \times 0.95}\left(\sin 60^{\circ}+\cos 60^{\circ}\right) \\
A_{s b}=0.001742\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]=17.42\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right] \\
\text { Use bent bars } 4 \Phi 25=19.635\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

## 17. Computing the area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction $\boldsymbol{A}_{s T}$

The required area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction $A_{S T}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s T}=\frac{M_{T}}{k_{2} d_{f}} \\
A_{s T}=\frac{0.099}{172 \times 0.45}=0.001279\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]=12.79\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $5 \Phi 19=14.2\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
The details of reinforcement in plan and sections $a-a$ and $i-i$ through the footing are shown in Figure 75


## Solved Examples

## Example 27: Design of a combined footing for three equal columns

Design a combined footing for three equal columns, each of $0.50 \times 0.50$ [m], reinforced by $4 \Phi 19$, carrying a load of $P=1500[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown in Figure 76. The distance center to center of columns is $3.0[\mathrm{~m}]$. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=210\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.


Figure 76: Combined rectangular footing for three columns

## 1. Determining footing sides $L$ and $B$

Resultant of loads $R$ at the ground surface level is given by:

$$
R=3 P=3 \times 1500=4500[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Allowable net soil pressure $q_{\text {net }}$ is given by:

$$
q_{\text {net }}=q_{\text {all }}-\gamma_{a} D_{f}=210-20 \times 2.0=170\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
A_{f}=\frac{R}{q_{n e t}}=\frac{4500}{170}=26.47\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

take $A_{f}=3.0 \times 9.0=27.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ rectangular combined footing

## Solved Examples

## 2. Computing the contact pressure

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the footing will be uniform. It is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{4500}{27}=166.67\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.167\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, the rectangular footing is treated as a beam footing. The contact pressure per meter is given by:

$$
q=q_{o} B=0.167 \times 3.0=0.5[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

Figure 77 shows the load diagram and moment diagram for the beam footing.

## 3. Determining the maximum moment $\boldsymbol{M}_{\text {max }}$

From Figure 77, the maximum bending moment in the longitudinal direction occurs at the middle of the footing which is:

$$
M_{\max }=P \frac{c^{2}}{2}=0.5 \frac{1.25^{2}}{2}=0.391[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$


Load diagram

Bending moment diagram
Bottom reinforcement $A_{s x b}$

Figure 77: Contact pressure, bending moment and critical sections

## 4. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.391}{3.0}}=0.28[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.28[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.
The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.45 \sqrt{\frac{3.0}{0.391}}=1.25
$$

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=1.27, f_{c}=5.0\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=182$

## 5. Check for punching shear

The critical punching shear section lies on a perimeter at a distance $d / 2=0.225[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown in Figure 78.


Figure 78: Critical section for punching shear

## Geometry (Figure 78)

Effective depth of the section
Column side
Area of critical punching shear section
Perimeter of critical punching shear section

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& a=b=0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& A_{p}=(a+d)^{2}=0.9025\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
& b_{o}=4(a+d)=3.8[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Loads and stresses

Column load
Soil pressure under the column
Main value of shear strength for concrete C 250

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P=1.5[\mathrm{MN}] \\
& q_{o}=0.167\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{c p}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
Q_{p}=1.5-0.167 \times 0.9025=1.35[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d} \\
q_{p}=\frac{1.35}{3.8 \times 0.45}=0.79\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{p a l l}=\left(0.5+\frac{0.5}{0.5}\right) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{p}=0.79\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for punching shear.

## 6. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

Minimum area of steel reinforcement $A_{\text {smin }}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 50 \times 100=7.5\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ Take $A_{s \text { min }}=5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.

The required area of steel reinforcement $A_{s}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s x b}=\frac{M_{\max }}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s x b}=\frac{0.391}{182 \times 0.45}=0.004774\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s x t}=47.74\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right]=15.91\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $6 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}=17.0\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$

## 7. Computing the steel reinforcement in transverse direction

The transverse bending moment may be approximately determined at each column by assuming that the column load is distributed outward at $45\left[^{\circ}\right]$ from the face of the column over an appropriate area as shown in Figure 79. Both sides of this area should not be greater than the breadth of the footing.

a) Elevation

$$
2 \times 0.5+0.5=1.5 \mathrm{~m}
$$



Figure 79: sections for determining transverse moments
Side length of the loaded area $L_{T}$ is given by:

$$
L_{T}=a+2 t=0.5+2 \times 0.5=1.5[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

The transverse bending moment $M_{T}$ under the column is given by:

$$
M_{T}=\frac{P}{8} \frac{\left(L_{T}-a\right)^{2}}{L_{T}}=\frac{1.5}{8} \frac{(1.5-0.5)^{2}}{1.5}=0.125[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

The required area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction under the column $A_{s T}$ is:

$$
A_{s T}=\frac{M_{T}}{k_{2} d}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{s T} & =\frac{0.125}{182 \times 0.45}=0.001526\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 1.5 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s T} & =15.26\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 1.5 \mathrm{~m}\right]=10.17\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Chosen steel $6 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=12.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$. The details of reinforcement in plan and section $a$ - $a$ through the footing are shown Figure 80.

Solved Examples

a) Section I-I

b) Plan

Figure 80: Details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing

## Solved Examples

## Example 28: Design of a combined footing for three unequal columns

Design a combined rectangular footing for three columns. Edge columns $C_{1}$ and $C_{3}$ have dimensions of $0.3 \times 0.5\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$, reinforcement $6 \Phi 19$ and a load of $1000[\mathrm{kN}]$, while the central column $C_{2}$ has dimensions of $0.5 \times 0.75\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$, reinforcement $10 \Phi 25$ and a load of $3000[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown in Figure 81. The allowable soil pressure $q_{\text {all }}=210\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ and the average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.



Figure 81: Combined rectangular footing for three unequal columns

## 1. Determining footing sides $L$ and $B$

Resultant of loads $R$ at the ground surface level is given by:

$$
R=2 P_{1}+P_{2}=2 \times 1000+3000=5000[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Allowable net soil pressure $q_{\text {net }}$ is given by:

$$
q_{\text {net }}=q_{\text {all }}-\gamma_{a} D_{f}=210-20 \times 2.0=170\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
A_{f}=\frac{R}{q_{n e t}}=\frac{5000}{170}=29.41\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

take $A_{f}=10.0 \times 3.0=30.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ rectangular combined footing

## 2. Computing the contact pressure

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the footing will be uniform. It is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{5000}{30}=166.67\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.167\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, the rectangular footing is treated as a beam footing. The contact pressure per meter is given by:

$$
q=q_{o} B=0.167 \times 3.0=0.5[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

## 3. Determining the critical bending moments

The maximum bending moment in the longitudinal direction of the footing occurs at the side face of the center column. Figure 82 shows the load diagram, bending moment and shear force diagram for the beam footing.

-1.5 [MN]


Figure 82: Load, shear force and bending moment diagrams with critical sections
The critical bending moments acting on column sides are:

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{C 1}=M_{C 3}=0.5 \times(0.5)^{2}-1.0 \times 0.25=-0.1875[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}] \\
M_{C 2}=0.5 \times(4.625)^{2}-1.0 \times 4.375=0.973[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The maximum bending moment occurs at the position of zero shear. Point of zero shear locates at $l_{z}$ from the outer face of the footing.

$$
\begin{gathered}
P_{1}=q l_{z} \\
1=0.5 \times l_{z} \\
l_{z}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}] \\
M_{\max }=q\left(l_{z}\right)^{2} / 2-P_{1}\left(l_{z}-C_{1}\right) \\
M_{\max }=0.5(2.0)^{2} / 2-1(2.0-0.25)=-0.75[\mathrm{MN.m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## 4. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $d_{m}$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.973}{3.0}}=0.436[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.436[\mathrm{~m}]$, and $t=0.5[\mathrm{~m}]$

## 5. Check for punching shear

The critical punching shear section lies on a perimeter at a distance $d / 2=0.225[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown in Figure 83.

## Column $C_{2}$

## Geometry (Figure 83)

Effective depth of the section
Column side
Area of critical punching shear section
Perimeter of critical punching shear section

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& a=0.75[\mathrm{~m}] \text { and } b=0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& A_{p}=(a+d)(b+d)=1.14\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
& b_{o}=2(a+d)+(b+d)=4.3[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Loads and stresses

Column load
Soil pressure under the column
Main value of shear strength for concrete C 250

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P=3.0[\mathrm{MN}] \\
& q_{o}=0.167\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{c p}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
Q_{p}=3.0-0.167 \times 1.14=2.81[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d} \\
q_{p}=\frac{2.81}{4.3 \times 0.45}=1.452\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{0.75}{0.5}\right) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]<q_{p}=1.452\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Determining the depth required to resist punching shear $\boldsymbol{d}_{p}$

$$
d_{p}=\frac{2.81}{4.3 \times 0.9}=0.726[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Take $d=0.75[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.726[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t=0.8[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.

a) Section $a-a$

b) Plan


Figure 83: Critical section for punching shear
Column $C_{1}=C_{3}$

## Geometry (Figure 83)

Effective depth of the section
Column side
Area of critical punching shear section
Perimeter of critical punching shear section

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d=0.75[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& a=0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \text { and } b=0.3[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& A_{p}=(a+d / 2)(b+d)=0.91875\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
& b_{o}=2(a+d / 2)+(b+d)=2.8[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Loads and stresses

Column load
Soil pressure under the column
Main value of shear strength for concrete C 250

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P=1.0[\mathrm{MN}] \\
& q_{o}=0.167\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{c p}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
Q_{p}=1.0-0.167 \times 0.91875=0.847[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d} \\
q_{p}=\frac{0.847}{2.8 \times 0.75}=0.403\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{0.5}{0.3}\right) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{p \text { all }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{p}=0.403\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for punching shear.

## 6. Computing the area of steel reinforcement in longitudinal direction $A_{s}$

Minimum area of steel reinforcement $A_{\text {smin }}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 80 \times 100=12.0\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ Take $A_{\text {smin }}=5 \Phi 19=14.176\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.

The required area of steel reinforcement in longitudinal direction $A_{s}$ is shown in Table 5:
Table 5: Determination of tension reinforcement in longitudinal direction

| Position | Breadth <br> $B[\mathrm{~m}]$ | Moment <br> $M[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]$ | Calculated $A_{s}$ <br> $A_{s}=M /\left(k_{2} . d\right) / B$ <br> $\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ | Chosen <br> reinforcement <br> $A_{s}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $A_{s C 1}=A_{s C 3}$ | 3.0 | -0.1875 | 4.845 | $5 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}$ |
| $A_{s C 2}$ | 3.0 | 0.9727 | 25.134 | $9 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}$ |
| $A_{s \max }$ | 3.0 | -0.7500 | 19.380 | $7 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}$ |

## 7. Computing the steel reinforcement in transverse direction

The transverse bending moment may be approximately determined at each column by assuming that the column load is distributed outward at 45 [ ${ }^{\circ}$ ] from the face of the column over an appropriate area as shown in Figure 84. Both sides of this area should not be greater than the breadth of the footing.

## Column $C_{1}=C_{3}$

Length of the loaded area $L_{T 1}$ is given by:

$$
L_{T 1}=a_{1}+t=0.5+0.8=1.3[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Breadth of the loaded area $B_{T 1}$ is given by:

$$
B_{T 1}=b_{1}+2 t=0.3+2 \times 0.8=1.9[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

The loaded area $A_{T 1}$ is given by:

$$
A_{T 1}=L_{T 1} \times B_{T 1}=1.3 \times 1.9=2.47\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

The contact pressure under the loaded area $P_{W 1}$ is given by:

$$
P_{w 1}=\frac{P_{1}}{A_{T 1}}=\frac{1.0}{2.47}=0.405\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

The transverse bending moment $M_{T 1}$ under the column is given by:

$$
M_{T 1}=P_{w 1}\left(\frac{B_{T 1}-b_{1}}{2}\right)^{2} L_{T 1} \times \frac{1}{2}=0.405 \times\left(\frac{1.9-0.3}{2}\right)^{2} \times 1.3 \times \frac{1}{2}=0.169[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

The required area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction under the column $A_{s T}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s T 1}=\frac{M_{T 1}}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s T}=\frac{0.169}{172 \times 0.75}=0.001310\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 1.3 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s T}=13.10\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 1.3 \mathrm{~m}\right]=10.08\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $5 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$

a) Section $a-a$

b) Plan

Figure 84: sections of transverse moment

## Column $C_{2}$

Length of the loaded area $L_{T 2}$ is given by:

$$
L_{T 2}=a_{2}+2 t=0.75+2 \times 0.8=2.35[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Breadth of the loaded area $B_{T 2}$ is given by:

$$
B_{T 2}=b_{2}+2 t=0.5+2 \times 0.8=2.1[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

The loaded area $A_{T 2}$ is given by:

$$
A_{T 2}=L_{T 2} \times B_{T 2}=2.35 \times 2.1=4.935\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

The contact pressure under the loaded area $P_{W 2}$ is given by:

$$
P_{w 2}=\frac{P_{2}}{A_{T 2}}=\frac{3.0}{4.935}=0.608\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

The transverse bending moment $M_{T 2}$ under the column is given by:

$$
M_{T 2}=P_{w 2}\left(\frac{B_{T 2}-b_{2}}{2}\right)^{2} L_{T 2} \times \frac{1}{2}=0.608 \times\left(\frac{2.1-0.5}{2}\right)^{2} \times 2.35 \times \frac{1}{2}=0.457[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

The required area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction under the column $A_{s T 2}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s T 2}=\frac{M_{T 2}}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s T 2}=\frac{0.457}{172 \times 0.75}=0.003543\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 2.35 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s T 2}=35.43\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 2.35 \mathrm{~m}\right]=15.075\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $6 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}=17.01\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
The details of reinforcement in plan and section $i-i$ through the footing are shown in Figure 85.

## Solved Examples


a) Section I-I

b) Plan with transverse reinforcement

Figure 85: Footing dimensions and reinforcement

## Solved Examples

## Example 29: Design of a combined ribbed footing for three unequal columns

Design a combined ribbed footing for three columns. Edge columns $C_{1}$ and $C_{3}$ have dimensions of $0.5 \times 0.7\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$, reinforcement $10 \Phi 22$ and a load of $2300\left[\mathrm{kN}\right.$ ], while the central column $C_{2}$ has dimensions of $0.5 \times 0.8\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$, reinforcement $12 \Phi 22$ and a load of $3000[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown in Figure 86. The allowable soil pressure $q_{\text {all }}=235\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ and the average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.


Figure 86: rectangular ribbed footing for three unequal columns

## 1. Determining footing sides $L$ and $B$

Resultant force $R$ equals to:

$$
R=2 P_{1}+P_{2}=2 \times 2300+3000=7600[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Allowable net soil pressure $q_{\text {net }}$ is given by:

$$
q_{\text {net }}=q_{\text {all }}-\gamma_{a} D_{f}=235-20 \times 2.0=195\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
A_{f}=\frac{R}{q_{n e t}}=\frac{7600}{195}=38.974\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

take $A_{f}=13.0 \times 3.0=39.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ rectangular combined footing

## 2. Computing the contact pressure

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the footing will be uniform. It is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{7600}{39}=195\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.195\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, the rectangular footing is treated as a beam footing. The contact pressure per meter is given by:

$$
q=q_{o} B=0.195 \times 3.0=0.585[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

## 3. Determining the critical bending moments

The maximum bending moment in the longitudinal direction of the footing occurs at the side face of the center column. Figure 87 shows the load diagram, bending moment and shear force diagram for the beam footing.


Figure 87: Load, shear force and bending moment diagrams with critical sections
The critical bending moments acting on column sides are:

$$
M_{C 1}=M_{C 3}=0.585 \times(1.15)^{2} / 2=0.387[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

$$
M_{C 2}=0.585 \times(6.1)^{2} / 2-2.3 \times 4.6=0.297[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

The maximum bending moment occurs at the position of zero shear. Point of zero shear locates at $l_{z}$ from the outer face of the footing.

$$
\begin{gathered}
P_{1}=q l_{z} \\
2.3=0.585 \times l_{z} \\
l_{z}=3.934[\mathrm{~m}] \\
M_{\max }=q\left(l_{z}\right)^{2} / 2-P_{1}\left(l_{z} C\right) \\
M_{\max }=0.585(3.934)^{2} / 2-2.3(3.934-1.5)=-1.074[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## 4. Determining the depth of the rib $d$

## Determining the depth $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$ required to resist the longitudinal moment $\boldsymbol{M}_{\text {max }}$

The section of the footing is T- section with depth $d_{m}$ and breadth of flange $B_{T}$
$B_{T}$ is the least of:

$$
\begin{gathered}
B=3.0[\mathrm{~m}] \\
4 b=4 \times 0.5=2.0[\mathrm{~m}] \\
1 / 4 \operatorname{Span}=5.0 / 4=1.25[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $B_{T}=1.25[\mathrm{~m}]$
From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B_{T}}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{1.074}{1.25}}=0.71[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.75[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.71[\mathrm{~m}]$, and $t=0.8[\mathrm{~m}]$

## Check for section capacity to resist maximum shear force $\boldsymbol{Q}_{\text {max }}$

The maximum critical shear section lies at a distance $d / 2=0.375[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the side face of the internal column.

Effective depth of the section
Rib width
Main value of shear strength for concrete C250
Max. value of shear strength for concrete C250

$$
\begin{aligned}
d & =0.75[\mathrm{~m}] \\
b & =0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \\
q_{c} & =0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{2} & =1.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

for maximum shear force $Q_{\max }$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q(x)=0.585 X-2.3 \\
X=6.5-0.4-0.375=5.725[\mathrm{~m}] \\
Q_{\max }=0.585 \times 5.725-2.3=1.047[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The shear stress $q$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q=\frac{Q_{\max }}{b d} \\
q=\frac{1.047}{0.5 \times 0.75}=2.792\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{2}=1.90\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Determining the depth $d_{s}$ required to resist the shear force $Q_{\text {max }}$

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{s}=\frac{Q_{\max }}{b q_{2}} \\
d_{s}=\frac{1.047}{0.5 \times 1.90}=1.102[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=1.15[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{s}=1.104[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t=1.2[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced T- section.

## 5. Determining the depth $\boldsymbol{d}_{f}$ required to resist the transverse moment $M_{T}$

The maximum transverse bending moment $M_{T}$ lies at the rib face as shown in Figure 88. $M_{T}$ value is given by:

$$
M_{T}=q_{o} \times 1.0 \times(c)^{2} / 2=0.195 \times 1.0 \times(1.25)^{2} / 2=0.152[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$



Cross section of the footing


Part plane of the footing Figure 88: Critical section of transverse moment

The footing depth $d_{f}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{f}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{T}}{1.0[\mathrm{~m}]}} \\
d_{f}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.152}{1.0}}=0.299[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d_{f}=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>0.299[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t_{f}=0.5[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.

## 6. Computing the area of steel reinforcement in longitudinal direction $A_{s}$

At first we should calculate the position of the neutral axis:

$$
k_{z}=\sqrt{\frac{30}{f_{c}(r+1)}}
$$

$f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=95\left[\mathrm{~kg} / \mathrm{cm}^{2}\right] \quad r=f_{s} / f_{c}=200 / 9.5=21[-]$

$$
\begin{gathered}
k_{z}=\sqrt{\frac{30}{95(21+1)}}=0.1198 \\
z=k_{z} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B_{T}}}=0.1198 \sqrt{\frac{1.074 \times 10^{7}}{125}}=35.12[\mathrm{~cm}]<t_{f}=50[\mathrm{~cm}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The neutral axis lies inside the slab footing, so the section is treated as rectangular section with $B_{T}$ and $d_{m}$ as shown in Figure 89.


Figure 89: T- section subjected to longitudinal moment $M_{\text {max }}$
Minimum area of steel reinforcement $A_{\text {smin }}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 50 \times 100=7.5\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ Take $A_{s \text { min }}=5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.

The required area of steel reinforcement in longitudinal direction $A_{s}$ is shown in Table 6:
Table 6: Determination of tension reinforcement in longitudinal direction

| Position | Moment <br> $M[\mathrm{MN.m}]$ | Calculated $A_{s}$ <br> $A_{s}=M /\left(k_{2} . d\right)\left[\mathrm{cm}^{2}\right]$ | Chosen reinforcement <br> $A_{s}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $A_{s C 1}=A_{s C 3}$ | 0.387 | 19.544 | $3 \Phi 22+4 \Phi 19$ |
| $A_{s C 2}$ | 0.297 | 15.015 | $6 \Phi 22$ |
| $A_{s \max }$ | -1.074 | 54.297 | $15 \Phi 22$ |

## 7. Check for shear stress

The maximum critical shear section lies at a distance $d / 2=0.575[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the internal column.
for maximum shear force $Q_{\max }$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q(x)=0.585 X-2.3 \\
X=6.5-0.4-0.575=5.525[\mathrm{~m}] \\
Q_{\max }=0.585 \times 5.525-2.3=0.93[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The shear stress $q$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q=\frac{Q_{\text {max }}}{b d} \\
q=\frac{0.93}{0.5 \times 1.15}=1.617\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{2}=1.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q=1.617\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{c}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{s}=q-q_{c} / 2=1.617-0.9 / 2=1.167\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The shear would be resisted using vertical stirrups and bent bars.

## Shear stress carried by stirrups

Using stirrups $5 \varphi 10 / \mathrm{m}, 4$ branches @ 200 [mm]

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{s s}=\frac{A_{s t} f_{s}}{b S} \\
q_{s s}=\frac{\left(4 \times 78.5 \times 10^{-6}\right) \times 200}{0.5 \times 0.2}=0.628\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Shear stress carried by bent bars

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{s b}=q_{s}-q_{s s}=1.167-0.628=0.539\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{s b}=\frac{A_{s b} f_{s}}{b d}(\sin \alpha+\cos \alpha) \\
0.539=\frac{A_{s b} \times 200}{0.5 \times 1.15}\left(\sin 60^{\circ}+\cos 60^{\circ}\right) \\
A_{s b}=0.0011344\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]=11.344\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Use bent bars $3 \Phi 22=19.0\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right]$

## 8. Computing the area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction $\boldsymbol{A}_{\boldsymbol{s} T}$

The required area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction $A_{S T}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s T}=\frac{M_{T}}{k_{2} d_{f}} \\
A_{s T}=\frac{0.152}{172 \times 0.45}=0.001964\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]=19.64\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $7 \Phi 19=19.847\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
The details of reinforcement in plan and sections $a-a$ and $i-i$ through the footing are shown in Figure 90.

## Solved Examples



Figure 90: Footing dimensions and reinforcement

# 5- Design of Combined Trapezoidal and T-Section Footings 

## Solved Examples

## Example 30: Design of a trapezoidal combined footing

It is required to design the trapezoidal combined footing shown in Figure 91. The footing is support to two columns $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ spaced at $l_{2}=4.8[\mathrm{~m}]$ apart. Due to the site conditions, the projections of the footing beyond the centers of columns $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ are limited to $l_{1}=0.9[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $l_{3}=1.3[\mathrm{~m}]$, respectively. Column $C_{1}$ is $0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \times 0.5[\mathrm{~m}]$, reinforced by $8 \Phi 16[\mathrm{~mm}]$ and carries a load of $P_{1}=$ $1200[\mathrm{kN}]$. Column C2 is $0.6[\mathrm{~m}] \times 0.6[\mathrm{~m}]$, reinforced by $12 \Phi 19[\mathrm{~mm}]$ and carries a load of $P_{2}=$ $2000[\mathrm{kN}]$. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=265\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=1.25[\mathrm{~m}]$ and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.


Figure 91: Combined trapezoidal footing

## 1. Determining footing sides $B_{s}$ and $B_{l}$

The primary design required to establish the area of footing so that the center of footing area coincides with the center of gravity of the resultant. This will be conducted as follows:

Resultant of loads $R$ at the ground surface level is given by:

$$
R=P_{1}+P_{2}=1200+2000=3200[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Resultant of total loads $R_{T}$ at the foundation level is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
R_{T}=\frac{R}{\left(1-\frac{\gamma_{a} D_{f}}{q_{a l l}}\right)} \\
R_{T}=\frac{3200}{\left(1-\frac{20 \times 1.25}{265}\right)}=3533.33[\mathrm{kN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
A_{f}=\frac{R_{T}}{q_{\text {all }}}=\frac{3533.33}{265}=13.33\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

Referring to Figure 91, area of the footing $A_{f}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{f} & =\frac{L}{2}\left(B_{s}+B_{l}\right) \\
13.33 & =\frac{7.0}{2}\left(B_{s}+B_{l}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Simplifying,

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{s}+B_{l}=3.81 \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Taking the moment of column loads about the center of the column $C_{1}$, the distance s between the point of application of the resultant and the center of column $C_{1}$ is obtained from:

$$
\begin{gathered}
s \times R=P_{2} \times l_{2} \\
s \times 3200=2000 \times 4.8 \\
s=3.0[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Hence, the point of application of the resultant is also the centroid of the footing area. Therefore, it can be shown from the geometry of the footing that the distance $r$ from the short side $B_{s}$ to the center of area is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
r=\frac{L}{3} \frac{B_{s}+2 B_{l}}{B_{s}+B_{l}} \\
l_{1}+s=\frac{L}{3} \frac{B_{s}+2 B_{l}}{B_{s}+B_{l}}
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
0.9+3.0=\frac{7.0}{3} \frac{B_{s}+2 B_{l}}{B_{s}+B_{l}}
$$

Simplifying,

$$
\begin{equation*}
2.04 B_{s}-B_{l}=0.0 \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Solving Equations (1) and (2) yields to the required dimensions of $B_{s}$ and $B_{l}$ as follows:

$$
B_{s}=1.25[\mathrm{~m}] \text { and } B_{l}=2.56[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Chosen dimensions of $B_{s}$ and $B_{l}$ are:

$$
B_{s}=1.3[\mathrm{~m}] \text { and } B_{l}=2.6[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

## 2. Computing the contact pressure and internal forces

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the footing will be uniform. It is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{3200}{0.5 \times(1.3+2.6) \times 7.0}=234\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.234\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, the trapezoidal footing is treated as a beam. In this case the contact pressure under the base of the footing per meter will be linear. The contact pressure per meter at the short side is given by:

$$
q_{s}=q_{o} B_{s}=0.234 \times 1.3=0.304[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

While the contact pressure per meter at the long side is given by:

$$
q_{l}=q_{o} B_{l}=0.234 \times 2.6=0.608[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

To draw the contact pressure, shear force and bending moment diagrams for the beam footing, general expressions for these parameters are required. General expression for the contact pressure per meter $q(x)$ at a distance $x$ from the short side is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q(x)=q_{s}+\left(q_{l}-q_{s}\right) \frac{X}{L}=0.304+(0.608-0.304) \frac{X}{7.0} \\
q(x)=0.304+0.043 X
\end{gathered}
$$

Shear force $Q(x)$ due to linear contact pressure is given by:

$$
Q(x)=\int q(x) d x
$$

General expression for the shear force $Q(x)$ at a distance $x$ from the short side is given by:

$$
Q(x)=\int(0.304+0.043 X) d x
$$

$$
Q(x)=0.304 X+0.022 X^{2}
$$

Moment $M(x)$ due to linear contact pressure is given by:

$$
M(x)=\int Q(x) d x
$$

General expression for the moment $M(x)$ at a distance $x$ from the short side is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
M(x)=\int\left(0.304 X+0.022 X^{2}\right) d x \\
M(x)=0.152 X^{2}+0.007 X^{3}
\end{gathered}
$$

Figure 92 shows the contact pressure, shear force and moment diagrams for the beam footing using the above general expressions.

## 3. Determining the maximum moment $M_{\max }$

The maximum negative bending moment in the longitudinal direction occurs at the point of zero shear between columns. Equating the shear forces to zero at that point gives the distance $x$ of maximum bending moment from the short side. At point of zero shear is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q(x)-P_{1}=0.0 \\
0.304 X+0.022 X^{2}-1.2=0.0
\end{gathered}
$$

Solving this equation gives:

$$
X=3.22[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

The maximum bending moment at the point of zero shear due to contact pressure and $P_{1}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{\max }=M(x)-P_{1}\left(X-l_{1}\right) \\
M_{\max }=0.152 X^{2}+0.007 X^{3}-P_{1}\left(X-l_{1}\right) \\
M_{\max }=0.152 \times 3.22^{2}+0.007 \times 3.22^{3}-1.2(3.22-0.9) \\
M_{\max }=-0.974[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Footing breadth $B$ at any section is given by:

$$
B=B_{s}+\left(B_{l}-B_{s}\right) \frac{X}{L}=1.3+(2.6-1.3) \frac{X}{7.0}
$$

Simplifying,

$$
B=1.3+0.186 X
$$

Footing breadth $B$ at the section of maximum moment is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
B=1.3+0.186 X \\
B=1.3+0.186 \times 3.22=1.9[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## 4. Determining the moment at critical sections $M_{C 1}$ and $M_{C 2}$

The critical sections of positive moments in the longitudinal direction lie at the faces of the columns as shown in Figure 92.

The moment at the face of column $C_{1}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{c 1}=0.152 X^{2}+0.007 X^{3} \\
M_{C 1}=0.152 \times 0.65^{2}+0.007 \times 0.65^{3} \\
M_{C 1}=0.066[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Footing breadth $B_{1}$ at the face of column $C_{1}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
B_{1}=1.3+0.186 \mathrm{X} \\
B_{1}=1.3+0.186 \times 0.65=1.42[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The moment at the face of column $C_{2}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{C 2}=0.152\left(l_{1}+l_{2}+0.3\right)^{2}+0.007\left(l_{1}+l_{2}+0.3\right)^{3}-P_{1}\left(l_{2}+0.3\right)-\left(0.3 P_{2}\right) \\
M_{C 2}=0.152 \times 6^{2}+0.007 \times 6^{3}-1.2 \times 5.1-0.3 \times 2 \\
M_{C 2}=0.264[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Footing breadth $B_{2}$ at the face of column $C_{2}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
B_{2}=1.3+0.186 \mathrm{X} \\
B_{2}=1.3+0.186 \times 6=2.42[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Solved Examples



Figure 92: Internal forces and critical sections

## Solved Examples

## 5. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.974}{1.9}}=0.55[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## 6. Check for punching shear

The critical punching shear section lies on a perimeter at a distance $d / 2=0.275[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown in Figure 93.The check for punching shear under columns $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ is shown in Table 7.

a) Section I-I

$$
q_{o}=0.234\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

$$
q_{o}=0.234\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$



Figure 93: Critical section for punching shear

Table 7: Check for punching shear

| Load, stress and geometry | Column $C_{1}$ | Column $C_{2}$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Column load $P[\mathrm{MN}]$ | 1.2 | 2.0 |
| Contact pressure $q_{o}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ | 0.234 | 0.234 |
| Column sides $a \times b\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ | $0.5 \times 0.5$ | $0.6 \times 0.6$ |
| Footing thickness $d[\mathrm{~m}]$ | 0.55 | 0.55 |
| Critical perimeter $b_{o}=4(a+d)[\mathrm{m}]$ | 4.2 | 4.6 |
| Critical area $A_{p}=(a+d)^{2}\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ | 1.1025 | 1.3225 |
| Punching load $Q_{p}=P-q_{r} A_{p}[\mathrm{MN}]$ | 0.942 | 1.69 |
| Punching shear stress $q_{p}=Q_{p} /\left(b_{o} d\right)\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ | 0.408 | 0.67 |

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=(0.5+1) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

For both columns $q_{\text {pall }}>q_{p}$, the footing section is safe for punching shear.
7. Computing the steel reinforcement in longitudinal direction

Minimumarea of steel reinforcement $A_{\text {smin }}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 60 \times 100=9.0\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
Take $A_{\text {s min }}=5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.
Determining the required area of steel reinforcement in both $x$-directions and $y$-directions is shown in Table 8:

Table 8: Determination of tension reinforcement for $x$-direction

| Position | Breadth <br> $B$ | Moment <br> $M$ <br> $[\mathrm{mN}]$ | Calculated $A_{s}$ <br> $A_{s}=M /\left(k_{2} d\right) / B$ <br> $\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ | Chosen <br> reinforcement <br> $A_{s}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $A_{s x 1}$ | 1.9 | 0.974 | 54.19 | $12 \Phi 25 / \mathrm{m}$ |
| $\left(A_{s x b}\right) C_{1}$ | 1.42 | 0.066 | 4.91 | $5 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=A_{\text {smin }}$ |
| $\left(A_{s x b}\right) C_{2}$ | 2.42 | 0.264 | 11.53 | $5 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}$ |

## Solved Examples

## 8. Computing the steel reinforcement in transverse direction

The transverse bending moment may be approximately determined at each column by assuming that the column load is distributed outward at $45\left[^{\circ}\right]$ from the face of the column over an appropriate area as shown in Figure 94. Both sides of this area should not be greater than the breadth of the footing.

a) Elevation


Figure 94: sections of transverse moment

## Column $C_{1}$

Length of the loaded area $L_{T 1}$ is given by:

$$
L_{T 1}=c+a_{1}+t=0.65+0.5+0.6=1.75[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Width of the loaded area $B_{T 1}$ at distance $1.7[\mathrm{~m}]$ is:

$$
B_{T 1}=1.3+0.186 \times L_{T 1}=1.3+0.186 \times 1.75=1.63[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Assuming for simplicity that the loaded area is a square area where its side $L_{a}$ is determined from:

$$
\begin{aligned}
L_{a}=\sqrt{\frac{B_{s}+B_{T}}{2} L_{T 1}} & =\sqrt{\frac{1.3+1.63}{2} 1.75}=1.6[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& -158-
\end{aligned}
$$

The transverse bending moment $M_{T 1}$ under the column $C_{1}$ is given by:

$$
M_{T 1}=\frac{P_{1}}{8} \frac{\left(L_{a}-a_{1}\right)^{2}}{L_{a}}=\frac{1.2}{8} \frac{(1.6-0.5)^{2}}{1.6}=0.113[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

## Column $C_{2}$

The loaded area under the column $C_{2}$ is square of side $L_{T 2}$ :

$$
L_{T 2}=a_{2}+2 t=0.6+2 \times 0.6=1.8[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

The transverse bending moment $M_{T 2}$ under the column $C_{2}$ is given by:

$$
M_{T 2}=\frac{P_{2}}{8} \frac{\left(L_{T 2}-a_{2}\right)^{2}}{L_{T 2}}=\frac{2}{8} \frac{(1.8-0.6)^{2}}{1.8}=0.2[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

Determining the required area of steel reinforcement in transverse directions is shown in Table 9. The details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing are shown in Figure 95.
Table 9: Determination of reinforcement for transverse direction

| Position | Breadth <br> $L_{T}$ <br> $[\mathrm{~m}]$ | Moment <br> $M$ <br> $[\mathrm{MN.m]}$ | Calculated $A_{s}$ <br> $A_{s}=M /\left(k_{2} . d\right) / B$ <br> $\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ | Chosen <br> reinforcement <br> $A_{s}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\left(A_{\text {syb }}\right) C_{1}$ | 1.6 | 0.113 | 7.47 | $5 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=A_{\text {smin }}$ |
| $\left(A_{s y b}\right) C_{2}$ | 1.8 | 0.2 | 11.75 | $6 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}$ |


a) Section I-I

b) Plan with top reinforcement

Figure 95: Details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing

## Example 31: Design of a combined T-shape footing

Design a combined T-shape footing of two columns, each of $0.5 \times 0.5\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$, reinforced by $4 \Phi 19$. Load of column $C_{1}$ is $P_{1}=1800[\mathrm{kN}]$ while that of column $C_{2}$ is $P_{2}=1200[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown in Figure 96. The distance center to center of columns is $l=3.0[\mathrm{~m}]$.


Figure 96: Combined T-section footing

## 1. Check for uniform contact pressure

To determine the center of gravity of the footing area from the left side, take moments of areas about the left side (Figure 97):

$$
\begin{gathered}
\bar{x}_{f} A_{f}=\sum x_{i} A_{i} \\
\bar{x}_{f}(3.0 \times 3.0+3.0 \times 2.0)=(1.5 \times 3.0 \times 3.0+4.5 \times 3.0 \times 2.0) \\
\bar{x}_{f}=2.7[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Point of application of the resultant force from column $C_{1}$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
R=P_{1}+P_{2}=1800+1200=3000[\mathrm{kN}] \\
R C=P_{2} l \\
3000 C=1200 \times 3.0 \\
C=1.2[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Point of application of the resultant force from the left side:

$$
\bar{x}_{R}=1.5+1.2=2.7[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

The point of application of the resultant force coincides with the center of gravity of the footing area. Then the contact pressure under the footing will be uniform.

## Solved Examples

## 2. Computing the contact pressure

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the footing is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{3200}{3.0 \times 3.0+3.0 \times 2.0}=200\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.2\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, the T-section footing is treated as a beam footing. The contact pressure per meter at the left side is given by:

$$
q_{1}=q_{o} B_{1}=0.2 \times 3.0=0.6[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

While the contact pressure per meter at the rigth side is given by:

$$
q_{2}=q_{o} B_{2}=0.2 \times 2.0=0.4[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

Figure 97 shows the load and moment diagrams for the beam footing.

## 3. Determining the maximum moment $M_{\text {max }}$

From Figure 97, the maximum bending moments in the longitudinal direction occur at faces of columns which are:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& M_{1}=q_{1} \frac{l_{1}^{2}}{2}=0.6 \frac{1.25^{2}}{2}=0.469[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}] \\
& M_{2}=q_{2} \frac{l_{2}^{2}}{2}=0.4 \frac{1.25^{2}}{2}=0.313[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{aligned}
$$

## 4. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B}} \\
d_{m 1}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.469}{3.0}}=0.3[\mathrm{~m}] \\
d_{m 2}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.313}{2.0}}=0.3[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Solved Examples

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.3[\mathrm{~m}]$.


Figure 97: Internal forces and critical sections

## Solved Examples

## 5. Determining the depth required to resist the punching shear $\boldsymbol{d}_{p}$

The critical punching shear section on a perimeter at a distance $\mathrm{d} / 2=0.225[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown in Figure 98. The check for punching shear under columns $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ is shown in Table 10.

Table 10: Check for punching shear

| Load, stress and geometry | Column $C_{1}$ | Column $C_{2}$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Column load $P[\mathrm{MN}]$ | 1.8 | 1.2 |
| Contact pressure $q_{o}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ | 0.2 | 0.2 |
| Column sides $a \times b\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ | $0.5 \times 0.5$ | $0.5 \times 0.5$ |
| Footing thickness $d[\mathrm{~m}]$ | 0.45 | 0.45 |
| Critical perimeter $b_{o}=4(a+d)[\mathrm{m}]$ | 3.8 | 3.8 |
| Critical area $A_{p}=(a+d)^{2}\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ | 0.9025 | 0.9025 |
| Punching load $Q_{p}=P-q_{r} A_{p}[\mathrm{MN}]$ | 1.62 | 1.02 |
| Punching shear stress $q_{p}=Q_{p} /\left(b_{o} d\right)\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ | 0.947 | 0.596 |

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=(0.5+1) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

For column $C_{1} q_{p}>q_{p a l l}$, the footing section is unsafe for punching shear. Then, the required thickness to resist punching shear is:

$$
d_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{o} q_{\text {pall }}}=\frac{1.62}{3.8 \times 0.9}=0.47[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Take $d=0.5[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{p}=0.47[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t=0.55[\mathrm{~m}]$.

## Solved Examples



Figure 98: Critical section for punching shear

## 6. Computing the steel reinforcement in longitudinal direction

The section is designed as singly reinforced section, the corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d=0.5$ [ m ] is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.5 \sqrt{\frac{3.0}{0.469}}=1.26
$$

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=1.27, f_{c}=5.0\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=182$
Minimum area of steel reinforcement $A_{\text {smin }}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 55 \times 100=8.25\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ Take $A_{\text {s min }}=5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.

Determining the required area of steel reinforcement in both $x$-directions and $y$-directions is shown in Table 11:

## Solved Examples

Table 11: Determination of tension reinforcement for $x$-direction

| Position | Breadth <br> $B$ | Moment <br> $M$ <br> $[\mathrm{~m}]$ | Calculated $A_{s}$ <br> $[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]$ | Chosen <br> $=M /\left(k_{2} d\right) / B$ <br> $\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | | reinforcement <br> $A_{s}$ |
| :---: |
| $\left(A_{s x b}\right) C_{1}$ |
| $\left(A_{s x b}\right) C_{2}$ |

## 7. Computing the steel reinforcement in transverse direction

The transverse bending moment may be approximately determined at each column by assuming that the column load is distributed outward at 45 ['] from the face of the column over an appropriate area as shown in Figure 99. Both sides of this area should not be greater than the breadth of the footing.


Figure 99: sections for determining transverse moments
Length of the loaded area $L_{T}$ is given by:

$$
L_{T}=a+2 t=0.5+2 \times 0.55=1.6[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

The transverse bending moment $M_{T 1}$ under the column $C_{1}$ is given by:

$$
M_{T 1}=\frac{P_{1}}{8} \frac{\left(L_{T}-a\right)^{2}}{L_{T}}=\frac{1.8}{8} \frac{(1.6-0.5)^{2}}{1.6}=0.17 \text { [MN.m] }
$$

The transverse bending moment $M_{T 2}$ under the column $C_{2}$ is given by:

$$
M_{T 2}=\frac{P_{2}}{8} \frac{\left(L_{T}-a\right)^{2}}{L_{T}}=\frac{1.2}{8} \frac{(1.6-0.5)^{2}}{1.6}=0.11[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

Determining the required area of steel reinforcement in transverse directions is shown in Table 12. The details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing are shown in Figure 100.

Table 12: Determination of reinforcement for transverse direction

| Position | Breadth <br> $L_{T}$ <br> $[\mathrm{~m}]$ | Moment <br> $M$ <br> $[\mathrm{MN.m]}$ | Calculated $A_{s}$ <br> $A_{s}=M /\left(k_{2} . d\right) / B$ <br> $\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ | Chosen <br> reinforcement <br> $A_{s}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\left(A_{s y b}\right) C_{1}$ | 1.6 | 0.17 | 12.06 | $6 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}$ |
| $\left(A_{s y b}\right) C_{2}$ | 1.6 | 0.11 | 7.55 | $5 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=A_{\text {smin }}$ |


a) Section I-I


Figure 100: details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing

## 6- Design of Strap Footings

## Solved Examples

## Example 32: Design of a strap footing for two equal interior columns

Design a strap footing for two equal interior columns, each of $0.5 \times 0.5\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$, reinforced by $4 \Phi 19$, carrying a load of $P=1500[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown in Figure 101. The distance center to center of columns is $5.0[\mathrm{~m}]$. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=210\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.


Figure 101: Combined strap footing

## 1. Determining footing sides

Allowable net soil pressure $q_{\text {net }}$ is given by:

$$
q_{\text {net }}=q_{\text {all }}-\gamma_{a} D_{f}=210-20 \times 2.0=170\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Area of each footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
A_{f}=\frac{P}{q_{n e t}}=\frac{1500}{170}=8.82\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

Take $A_{f}=3.0 \times 3.0=9.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ square footing

## 2. Computing the contact pressure

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the footing will be uniform. It is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{1500}{9.0}=166.67\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.167\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, the strap footing is treated as a beam supporting on two equal footings. The contact pressure per meter is given by:

$$
q=q_{o} B_{s}=0.167 \times 3.0=0.5[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

Figure 102 shows the load, shear force and moment diagrams for the strap footing.

## 3. Design of the strap beam

From Figure 102, the maximum bending moment in the strap beam occurs at the face of the column, which is:

$$
M_{\max }=q \frac{c^{2}}{2}=0.5 \frac{1.25^{2}}{2}=0.391[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{b}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.391}{0.5}}=0.68[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.70[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.68[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t=0.75[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.

The required area of steel reinforcement $A_{s}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s}=\frac{M_{\max }}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s}=\frac{0.391}{172 \times 0.7}=0.003248\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
A_{s}=32.48\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right] \\
-171-
\end{gathered}
$$

## Solved Examples

Chosen steel $9 \Phi 22=34.2\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right]$ at bottom. Take $A_{s}{ }^{`}=0.25 A_{s}=4 \Phi 19=11.3\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right]$


Shear force diagram


Figure 102: Load, shear force and moment diagrams with critical section of the strap beam

## 4. Design of the footing slab

The maximum bending moment for the footing slab lies at the strap face as shown in Figure 103. The transverse bending moment $M_{T}$ at the strap face is given by:



Figure 103: Section for determining footing reinforcement
The footing depth $d_{f}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{f}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{T}}{L}} \\
d_{f}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.391}{3.0}}=0.28[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d_{f}=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>0.28[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t_{f}=0.5[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.
The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d_{f}=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.45 \sqrt{\frac{3.0}{0.391}}=1.25
$$

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=1.27, f_{c}=5.0\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=182$
The required area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction $A_{s T}$ is:

$$
A_{s T}=\frac{M_{T}}{k_{2} d}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{s} & =\frac{0.391}{182 \times 0.45}=0.004774\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s T} & =47.74\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right]=15.91\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Chosen steel $6 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}=17.0\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
The details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing are shown in Figure 104.

b) Plan

Figure 104: Footing dimensions and reinforcement

## Solved Examples

## Example 33: Design of a strap footing for two equal edge columns

Design a strap footing for two equal edge columns, each of $0.5 \times 0.5\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$, reinforced by $4 \Phi 19$, carrying a load of $P=1500[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown in Figure 105. The distance center to center of columns is $7.5[\mathrm{~m}]$. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=210\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.


Figure 105: Combined strap footing

## 1. Determining footing sides

Allowable net soil pressure $q_{\text {net }}$ is given by:

$$
q_{\text {net }}=q_{\text {all }}-\gamma_{a} D_{f}=210-20 \times 2.0=170\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Area of each footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
A_{f}=\frac{P}{q_{\text {net }}}=\frac{1500}{170}=8.82\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

Take $A_{f}=3.0 \times 3.0=9.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ square footing

## Solved Examples

## 2. Computing the contact pressure

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the footing will be uniform. It is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{1500}{9.0}=166.67\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.167\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, the strap footing is treated as a beam supporting on two equal footings. The contact pressure per meter is given by:

$$
q=q_{o} B=0.167 \times 3.0=0.5[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

Figure 106 shows the load, shear force and moment diagrams for the strap footing.

## 3. Design of the strap beam

From Figure 106, the maximum bending moment in the strap beam occurs at the face of the column, which is:

$$
M_{\max }=p c-q \frac{L^{2}}{2}=1.5 \times 2.75-0.5 \frac{3.0^{2}}{2}=1.875[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{b}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{1.875}{0.5}}=1.48[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=1.5[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=1.48[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t=1.55[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.

The required area of steel reinforcement $A_{s}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s}=\frac{M_{\max }}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s}=\frac{1.875}{172 \times 1.5}=0.007267\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
A_{s}=72.67\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right] \\
-176-
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel 20Ф22 $=76.0\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right]$ at top. Take $A_{s}{ }^{\circ}=0.25 A_{s}=5 \Phi 22=19.0\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right]$


Figure 106: Load, shear force and moment diagrams with critical section of the strap beam

## 4. Design of the footing slab

The maximum bending moment for the footing slab lies at the strap face as shown in Figure 107. The transverse bending moment $M_{T}$ at the strap face is given by:

$$
M_{T}=\frac{q_{o}}{8} L(B-b)^{2}=\frac{0.167}{8} 3.0(3.0-0.5)^{2}=0.391[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$



Figure 107: Section for determining footing reinforcement
The footing depth $d_{f}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{f}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{T}}{L}} \\
d_{f}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.391}{3.0}}=0.28[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d_{f}=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>0.28[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t_{f}=0.5[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.

The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d_{f}=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.45 \sqrt{\frac{3.0}{0.391}}=1.25
$$

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=1.27, f_{c}=5.0\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=182$
The required area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction $A_{s T}$ is:

$$
A_{s T}=\frac{M_{T}}{k_{2} d}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{s}=\frac{0.391}{182 \times 0.45}=0.004774\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
& A_{s T}=47.74\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right]=15.91\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Chosen steel $6 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}=17.0\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
The details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing are shown in Figure 108.

## Solved Examples


a) Section I-I

b) Plan

Figure 108: Footing dimensions and reinforcement

## Solved Examples

## Example 34: Design of a strap footing for two unequal columns

Design a strap footing for an exterior column load of $P_{1}=1200[\mathrm{kN}]$ and an interior column with a load of $P_{2}=1500[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown in Figure 109. Allowable bearing capacity of the soil is $q_{\text {all }}=200$ $\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=1.6[\mathrm{~m}]$ and theaverage unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20$ $\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.


Figure 109: Combined strap footing

## 1. Determining point of application of the resultant force

Resultant force R equals:

$$
R=P_{1}+P_{2}=1200+1500=2700[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Take the moment about $C_{2}$ to get the distance $S$ :

$$
P_{1} l=R S
$$

$$
\text { - } 181 \text { - }
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
1200 \times 7.0=2700 \times S \\
S=3.11[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Point of application from the property line $X_{P}$ :

$$
X_{p}=7.0-3.11+0.25=4.14[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

## 2. Determining footing sides

Allowable net soil pressure $q_{\text {net }}$ is given by:

$$
q_{\text {net }}=q_{\text {all }}-\gamma_{a} D_{f}=200-20 \times 1.6=168\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

## Trail (1)

$$
A_{f 1}=\frac{P_{1}}{q_{\text {net }}}=\frac{1200}{168}=7.14\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

Take $A_{f l}=3.0 \times 2.5=7.5\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ Rectangular footing

$$
A_{f 2}=\frac{P_{2}}{q_{\text {net }}}=\frac{1500}{168}=8.92\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
$$

$$
\text { Take } A_{f 2}=3.0 \times 3.0=9.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \text { Square footing }
$$

Total area:
Take moment of areas about the property line, to get the distance $X_{s}$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{f 1} X_{1}+A_{f 2} X_{2}=A_{t} X_{s} \\
(7.5 \times 1.5)+(9.0 \times 7.25)=16.5 X_{s} \\
X_{s}=4.64[\mathrm{~m}]>X_{p}
\end{gathered}
$$

$X_{s}>X_{p}$, there for $A_{f 2}$ must be reduced and $A_{f 1}$ must be exceed.

## Trail (2)

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{f 1}=3.0 \times 3.0=9.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \text { Square footing } \\
A_{f 2}=2.5 \times 3.0=7.5\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \text { Rectangular footing } \\
\quad A_{t}=9.0+7.5=16.5\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
X_{s}=\frac{(9.0 \times 1.5)+(7.5 \times 7.25)}{16.5}=4.11[\mathrm{~m}] \cong X_{p}
\end{gathered}
$$

## 3. Computing the contact pressure

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the footing will be uniform. It is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{2700}{16.5}=163.64\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.164\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, the strap footing is treated as a beam supporting on two unequal footings. The contact pressure per meter square under the footing (1) is given by:

$$
q_{1}=q_{o} B_{1}=0.164 \times 3.0=0.491[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

While the contact pressure under the footing (2) is given by:

$$
q_{2}=q_{o} B_{2}=0.164 \times 3.0=0.491[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

## 4. Determining the critical bending moments

The maximum bending moment in the longitudinal direction of the strap beam occurs at the interior edge of the left footing. Figure 110 shows the load diagram, Bending moment and shear force diagram for the strap beam.

The critical bending moments are:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& M_{C 1}=0.491 \times(0.5)^{2} / 2-1.2 \times 0.25=-0.239[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}] \\
& M_{\text {Design }}=0.491 \times(3.0)^{2} / 2-1.2 \times 2.75=-1.091[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}] \\
& M_{C 2}=0.491 \times(1.5)^{2} / 2=0.246[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
\end{aligned}
$$

## 5. Determining the depth of the strap beam $d$

## Determining the depth $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$ required to resist the longitudinal moment $\boldsymbol{M}_{\text {max }}$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$. Take the strap breadth $b=0.5[\mathrm{~m}]$. The maximum depth $d_{m}$ for the strap as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{1.09}{0.5}}=1.13[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=1.15[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=1.13[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t=1.2[\mathrm{~m}]$.


Figure 110: Load, shear force and moment diagrams with critical section

## Solved Examples

## Check for section capacity to resist maximum shear force $\boldsymbol{Q}_{\text {max }}$

The maximum critical shear section lies at a distance $d / 2=0.575[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the side face of the internal column.

Effective depth of the section
Strap beam width
Main value of shear strength for concrete C250
Max. value of shear strength for concrete C250

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d=1.15[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& b=0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& q_{c}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{2}=1.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

for maximum shear force $Q_{\max }$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q(x)=0.491 X-1.2 \\
X=0.5+0.575=1.075[\mathrm{~m}] \\
Q_{\max }=0.491 \times 1.075-1.2=-0.672[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The shear stress $q$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q=\frac{Q_{\max }}{b d} \\
q=\frac{0.672}{0.5 \times 1.15}=1.169\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]<q_{2}=1.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=1.15[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{s}=1.13[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t=1.2[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.

## 6. Computing the area of steel reinforcement in longitudinal direction $A_{s}$

Minimum area of steel reinforcement $A_{\text {smin }}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 50 \times 100=7.5\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ Take $A_{s \text { min }}=5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$. The required area of steel reinforcement in longitudinal direction $A_{s}$ is shown in Table 13:

Table 13: Determination of tension reinforcement in longitudinal direction

| Position | Moment <br> $M$ | Calculated $A_{s}$ <br> $A_{s}=M /\left(k_{2} . d\right) / B$ <br> $\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ | Chosen <br> reinforcement <br> $A_{s}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $A_{s C 1}$ | -0.239 | 12.083 | $2 \Phi 22+4 \Phi 19$ |
| $A_{s C 2}$ | 0.246 | 12.437 | $4 \Phi 22$ |
| $A_{\text {smax }}$ | -1.901 | 55.157 | $15 \Phi 22$ |

## 7. Check for shear stress

The maximum critical shear section lies at a distance $d / 2=0.575[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the side face of the internal column.
for maximum shear force $Q_{\max }$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q(x)=0.491 X-1.2 \\
X=0.5+0.575=1.075[\mathrm{~m}] \\
Q_{\max }=0.491 \times 1.075-1.2=-0.672[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The shear stress $q$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q=\frac{Q_{\max }}{b d} \\
q=\frac{0.672}{0.5 \times 1.15}=1.169\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{2}=1.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q=1.169\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{c}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{s}=q-q_{c} / 2=1.169-0.9 / 2=0.719\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The shear would be resisted using vertical stirrups and bent bars.

## Shear stress carried by stirrups

Using stirrups $5 \varphi 8 / \mathrm{m}, 4$ branches @ 200 [mm]

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{s s}=\frac{A_{s t} f_{s}}{b S} \\
q_{s s}=\frac{\left(4 \times 50.27 \times 10^{-6}\right) \times 200}{0.5 \times 0.2}=0.402\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Shear stress carried by bent bars

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{s b}=q_{s}-q_{s s}=0.719-0.402=0.317\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{s b}=\frac{A_{s b} f_{s}}{b d}(\sin \alpha+\cos \alpha) \\
0.317=\frac{A_{s b} \times 200}{0.5 \times 1.15}\left(\sin 60^{\circ}+\cos 60^{\circ}\right) \\
A_{s b}=0.0006672\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]=6.672\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
\text { Use bent bars } 2 \Phi 22=7.6\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2}\right]
$$

## 8. Design of the footing slab

The maximum bending moment for the footing slab lies at the first strap face as shown in Figure 111. The transverse bending moment $M_{T}$ at the strap face is given by:

$$
M_{T}=f_{n} \times 3.0 \times(1.25)^{2} / 2=0.384[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$



Figure 111: Section for determining footing reinforcement
The footing depth $d_{f}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{f}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{T}}{L}} \\
d_{f}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.384}{3.0}}=0.274[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d_{f}=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>0.274[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t_{f}=0.5[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.

The required area of steel reinforcement in transverse direction $A_{s T}$ is:

$$
A_{s T}=\frac{M_{T}}{k_{2} d_{f}}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{s} & =\frac{0.384}{172 \times 0.45}=0.004961\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s T} & =49.61\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right]=16.54\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Chosen steel $6 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}=17.0\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
The details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing are shown in Figure 112.

## Solved Examples


a) Section $a-a$

b) Plan

Figure 112: Footing dimensions and reinforcement

## 7- Design of Rafts

## Solved Examples

## Example 35: Design of a circular raft for a cylindrical core

It is required to design a foundation for a cylindrical core of a building, Figure 113. The diameter of the core wall is $d=8.0[\mathrm{~m}]$, while the width of the wall is $t_{w}=0.3[\mathrm{~m}]$. The core lies in the center of the building and it is not subject to any significant lateral applied loading. Therefore, the core wall carries only a vertical load of $p=300[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}]$. The base of the cylindrical core wall is chosen to be a circular raft of $D=10.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ diameter with $1.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ ring cantilever as shown in Figure 113. Poisson's ratio of concrete is $v_{c}=0.20[-]$.


Figure 113: a) Plan of the raft with wall load and dimensions
b) Section $x-x$ through the raft

## 1. Computing the contact pressure under the raft $\boldsymbol{q}$

Total load on the raft is given by:

$$
N=P \pi d=300 \times \pi \times 8.0=7540[\mathrm{kN}]=7.54[\mathrm{MN}]
$$

The contact pressure at the base of the raft is:

$$
q=\frac{N}{A_{f}}=\frac{7540}{\frac{\pi 10^{2}}{4}}=96.0\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.096\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

## 2. Computing moments at critical sections $M_{1}, M_{2}$ and $M_{3}$

Critical sections of moments are shown in Figure 114.


Figure 114: a) Section $x$ - $x$ through the raft
b) Moments at section $x$-x with main reinforcement $A_{s}$ at critical sections

Contact force $R$ :

$$
R=q \frac{\pi d^{2}}{4}=0.096 \frac{\pi 8.0^{2}}{4}=4.83[\mathrm{MN}]
$$

Moment $M_{c}$ :

$$
M_{c}=\frac{3+v_{c}}{16 \pi} R=\frac{3.0+0.2}{16 \pi} 4.83=0.307[\mathrm{MN} \cdot \mathrm{~m} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

Moment under the wall $M_{1}=M_{2}$ :

$$
M_{1}=M_{2}=q_{o} c a=0.096 \times 0.5 \times 1.0=0.048[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

Moment at the center of the raft $M_{3}$ :

$$
M_{3}=M_{c}-M_{1}=0.307-0.048=0.259[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

## 3. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

The maximum moment is at the raft center $M_{3}$.From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200$ [ $\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ ], the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172$ [ $\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ ].

Take one meter strip $B=1.0[\mathrm{~m}]$. The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{3}}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.259}{1.0}}=0.39[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.39[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.
The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.45 \sqrt{\frac{1.0}{0.2591}}=0.884
$$

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=0.873, f_{c}=8.0\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=175$

## 4. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

The bottom reinforcement is chosen to be in radial and tangential directions while the top reinforcement is chosen to be in $x$-directions and $y$-directions.

Top reinforcement in $x$-directions and $y$-directions $A_{s x t}=A_{s y t}$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s x t}=\frac{M_{3}}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s x t}=\frac{0.259}{175 \times 0.45}=0.003289\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right] \\
A_{s x t}=32.89\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $9 \Phi 22=34.2\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ in both directions.

Bottom reinforcement in radial direction $A_{s r b}$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s r b}=\frac{M_{1}}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s r b}=\frac{0.048}{175 \times 0.45}=0.00061\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right] \\
A_{s r b}=6.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.
The raft is reinforced by a square mesh $9 \Phi 22[\mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{m}]$ in the upper surface, while the lower surface is reinforced by $5 \Phi 16[\mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{m}]$ in radial and tangential directions. In addition, an upper radial and tangential reinforcement $9 \Phi 19[\mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{m}]$ are used at the cantilever ring. A small square mesh $5 \Phi 16$ $[\mathrm{mm} / \mathrm{m}]$, each side is $1.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ is used at the center of the raft to connect the bottom radial reinforcement.

The details of reinforcement of the raft are shown in Figure 115.

## Solved Examples



Figure 115: a) Section $x$-x through the raft with reinforcement b) Reinforcement of the raft in plan

## Solved Examples

## Example 36: Design of a circular raft subjected to moment due to lateral loading

It is required to design a foundation for a cylindrical elevated tank, Figure 116. The diameter of the tank wall is $d=5.6[\mathrm{~m}]$, while the width of the wall is $t_{w}=0.3[\mathrm{~m}]$. The tank is subject to a moment due to lateral loading $M_{l t}=3000[\mathrm{kN} . \mathrm{m}]$ and a vertical load of $P=454.729[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}]$ as shown in Figure 116. The allowable net soil pressure is $q_{\text {net }}=190\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth $D_{f}=1.7[\mathrm{~m}]$ and Poison's ratio of concrete is $v_{c}=0.20[-]$.

a) section $i-i$

b) Plan

Figure 116: Circular raft for a circular tank

## 1. Determining the raft diameter $D$

Total load on the raft is given by:

$$
N=P \pi d=454.729 \times \pi \times 5.6=8000[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

The diameter of the raft $D$ is obtained from:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q=\frac{N}{A_{r}} \pm \frac{M_{l t}}{z_{r}} \\
190=\frac{8000}{\frac{\pi}{4} D^{2}} \pm \frac{3000}{\frac{\pi}{32} D^{3}} \\
D^{3}-53.61 D-160.83=0.0
\end{gathered}
$$

Solving this equation, leads to $D=8.515$ [m]. Take $D=8.6$ [m]

## 2. Computing the contact pressure under the raft $\boldsymbol{q}$

The contact pressure under the raft is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{1,2}=\frac{8000}{\frac{\pi}{4} 8.6^{2}} \pm \frac{3000}{\frac{\pi}{32} 8.6^{3}} \\
q_{1,2}=137.72 \pm 48.04 \\
q_{1}=185.76\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]<190\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \quad(\text { O.K. }) \\
q_{2}=89.68\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{3}=q_{2}+\frac{c}{D}\left(q_{1}-q_{2}\right) \\
q_{3}=89.68+\frac{1.5}{8.6}(185.76-89.68) \\
q_{3}=106.438\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
q_{4}=q_{2}+\frac{c+d}{D}\left(q_{1}-q_{2}\right) \\
q_{4}=89.68+\frac{1.5+5.6}{8.6}(185.76-89.68) \\
q_{3}=169\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

## 3. Computing moments at critical sections

Critical sections of moments are shown in Figure 117.


Figure 117: Load and bending moment acting on the raft

## Computing the moment $M_{1}$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{1}=\left(1 / 2 \times\left(q_{3}-q_{2}\right) \times c^{2} / 3\right)+\left(q_{2} \times c^{2} / 2\right) \\
M_{1}=\left(1 / 2 \times(0.106-0.09) \times 1.5^{2} / 3\right)+\left(0.09 \times 1.5^{2} / 2\right) \\
M_{1}=0.107[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m} / \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Computing the moment $M_{2}$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{2}=\left(1 / 2 \times\left(q_{1}-q_{4}\right) \times 2 c^{2} / 3\right)+\left(q_{4} \times 2 c^{2} / 2\right) \\
M_{1}=\left(1 / 2 \times(0.186-0.169) \times 2 \times 1.5^{2} / 3\right)+\left(0.169 \times 2 \times 1.5^{2} / 2\right) \\
M_{2}=0.203[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m} / \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Moment at the center of $\operatorname{span} M_{3}$ :

Average contact pressure $q_{a v}$ :

$$
q_{a v}=\left(q_{1}+q_{2}\right) / 2=(0.186+0.09) / 2=0.138\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Contact force $R$ :

$$
R=q_{a v} \frac{\pi d^{2}}{4}=0.138 \frac{\pi 5.6^{2}}{4}=3.392[\mathrm{MN}]
$$

Total moment $M$ at mid span:

$$
M=\frac{3+v_{c}}{16 \pi}\left(1-\rho^{2}\right) R
$$

where $\rho=r / a$
For $\rho=0$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{c}=\frac{3+v_{c}}{16 \pi} R \\
M_{c}=\frac{3+0.2}{16 \pi} 3.392 \\
M_{c}=0.216[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m} / \mathrm{m}] \\
M_{3}=\left(M_{1}+M_{2}\right) / 2-M_{c} \\
M_{3}=(0.107+0.203) / 2-0.216=-0.061[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m} / \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## Computing the maximum negative bending moment $M_{4}$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
M^{+v e} & =0.017 x+0.107 \\
M & =\frac{3+v_{c}}{16 \pi}\left(1-\rho^{2}\right) R
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\rho=r / a=r / 2.8$ and $x=2.8-r$

$$
\begin{gathered}
M^{+v e}=0.155-0.17 r \\
M=\frac{3+0.2}{16 \pi}\left(1-\frac{r^{2}}{7.84}\right) 3.392 \\
M=0.216-0.028 r^{2} \\
M^{-v e}=M^{+v e}-M \\
M^{-v e}=0.028 r^{2}-0.017 r-0.061 \\
-199-
\end{gathered}
$$

The shear force at mid span $Q$ :

$$
Q=d M^{-v e} / d r=0.055 r-0.017
$$

The maximum bending moment occurs at the position of zero shear. Point of zero shear locates at distance $r$ from the center of the raft.

$$
\begin{gathered}
0.055 r-0.017=0.0 \\
r=0.311
\end{gathered}
$$

The maximum negative bending moment $M_{4}$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{4}=0.028 \times 0.311^{2}-0.017 \times 0311-0.061 \\
M_{4}=-0.0635[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m} / \mathrm{m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

## 4. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $d_{m}$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{2}}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.203}{1.0}}=0.345[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.345[\mathrm{~m}]$ and $t=0.5[\mathrm{~m}]$

## 5. Computing the area of steel reinforcement $A_{s}$

Minimum area of steel reinforcement $A_{s m i n}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 50 \times 100=7.5\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ Take $A_{\text {smin }}=5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.

The bottom reinforcement is chosen to be in radial and tangential directions while the top reinforcement is chosen to be in $x$-directions and $y$-directions.

Top reinforcement in $x$-directions and $y$-directions $A_{s x t}=A_{\text {syt }}$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s x t}=\frac{M_{\max }}{k_{2} d_{r}} \\
A_{s x t}=\frac{0.0635}{172 \times 0.45}=0.0008 .22\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right] \\
-200-
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
A_{s x t}=8.22\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
$$

Chosen steel $5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ in both directions.
Bottom reinforcement in radial direction $A_{s r b}$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s r b}=\frac{M_{2}}{k_{2} d_{r}} \\
A_{s r b}=\frac{0.203}{172 \times 0.45}=0.002619\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right] \\
A_{s r b}=26.19\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $10 \Phi 19=28.353\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.
However, the raft is designed for linear contact pressure, but a uniform raft thickness and distribution of steel reinforcement are considered. The raft is reinforced by a square mesh $5 \Phi 16$ in the upper surface, while the lower surface is reinforced by $10 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}$ in radial and tangential directions. In addition, an upper radial and tangential reinforcement $5 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}$ are used at the cantilever ring. A small square mesh $5 \Phi 16$, each side is $1.75[\mathrm{~m}]$ is used at the center of the raft are shown in Figure 118.

The details of reinforcement of the raft are shown in Figure 118.

## Solved Examples


b) Plan

Top reinforcement
Bottom reinforcement
Figure 118: Raft dimensions and reinforcement

## Solved Examples

## Example 37: Design of a square raft for a box core

It is required to design a foundation for a square box core of a building, Figure 119. The side of the core wall is $l_{w}=8.0[\mathrm{~m}]$, while the width of the wall is $t_{w}=0.3[\mathrm{~m}]$. The wall is reinforced by $5 \Phi 13 / \mathrm{m}$ in both directions. The core wall carries a vertical load of $P=300[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}]$. The base of the core is chosen to be a square raft of side $L$ as shown in Figure 119. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=136$ $\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.


Figure 119: a) Plan of the raft with wall load and dimensions
b) Section $\mathrm{x}-\mathrm{x}$ through the raft

## 1. Determining the raft side $L$

Resultant of loads R at the ground surface level is given by:

$$
R=4 l_{w} P=4 \times 8.0 \times 300=9600[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Allowable net soil pressure $q_{n e t}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {net }}=q_{\text {all }}-\gamma_{a} D_{f}=136-20 \times 2.0=96\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
A_{f}=\frac{R}{q_{\text {net }}}=\frac{9600}{96}=100\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $A_{f}=10.0 \times 10.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ square footing

## 2. Computing the contact pressure

Now, take one meter strip, $B=1.0[\mathrm{~m}] \& P=300[\mathrm{kN}]$, and treat the strip as a beam footing. The contact pressure per meter is given by:

$$
q=\frac{2 P}{L}=\frac{2 \times 300}{10}=60[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}]=0.06[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

Figure 120 shows the load diagram and moment diagram for the strip.

## 3. Computing moments at critical sections

Critical sections of moments are shown in Figure 120.
Moment $M_{c}$ :

$$
M_{c}=\frac{q l_{\mathrm{w}}{ }^{2}}{8}=\frac{0.06 \times 8.0^{2}}{8}=0.48[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

Moment under the wall $M_{1}=M_{2}$ :

$$
M_{1}=M_{2}=q \text { c } a=0.06 \times 0.5 \times 1.0=0.03[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

Moment at the center of the raft $M_{3}$ :

$$
M_{3}=M_{C}-M_{1}=0.48-0.03=0.45[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

## 4. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$. Take the strap breadth $b=0.5[\mathrm{~m}]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ for the strap as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{3}}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.45}{1.0}}=0.51[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.55[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.6[\mathrm{~m}]$ then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.
The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d=0.55[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

## Solved Examples

$$
k_{1}=0.55 \sqrt{\frac{1.0}{0.45}}=0.82
$$

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=0.82, f_{c}=8.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=174$


Figure 120: a) Section $x$ - $x$ through the raft
b) Moments at section $x-x$ with main reinforcement $A_{s}$ at critical sections

## 5. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

Top reinforcement in $x$-directions and $y$-directions $A_{s x t}=A_{s y y}$ :

$$
A_{s x t}=\frac{M_{3}}{k_{2} d}
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s x t}=\frac{0.45}{174 \times 0.55}=0.004702\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right] \\
A_{s x t}=47.02\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $13 \Phi 22 / \mathrm{m}=49.4\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ in both directions.
Bottom reinforcement in $x$-directions and $y$-directions $A_{s x b}=A_{s y b}$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s x b}=\frac{M_{1}}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s x b}=\frac{0.03}{174 \times 0.55}=0.000314\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right] \\
A_{s x b}=3.14\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel $5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.
The raft is reinforced by a square mesh $13 \Phi 22[\mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{m}]$ in the upper surface, while the lower surface is reinforced by $5 \Phi 16[\mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{m}]$ in $x$-directions and $y$-directions. In addition, an upper reinforcement $6.5 \Phi 16[\mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{m}]$ are used at the cantilever in $x$-directions and $y$-directions.

The details of reinforcement of the raft are shown in Figure 121.

Solved Examples


Figure 121: a) Section $x$-x through the raft with reinforcement
b) Reinforcement of the raft in plan

## Example 38: Design of a square raft for four equal interior columns

Design a square raft for four equal interior columns, each of $0.50 \times 0.50\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$, reinforced by $4 \Phi 19$, carrying a load of $P=1500[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown in Figure 122. The distance center to center of columns is $3.0[\mathrm{~m}]$. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=210\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.


Figure 122: Square raft for four interior edge columns

## 1. Determining raft side $L$

Resultant of loads $R$ at the ground surface level is given by:

$$
R=4 P=4 \times 1500=6000[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Resultant of total loads $R_{T}$ at the foundation level is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
R_{T}=\frac{R}{\left(1-\frac{\gamma_{a} D_{f}}{q_{a l l}}\right)} \\
R_{T}=\frac{6000}{\left(1-\frac{20 \times 2}{210}\right)}=7411.76[\mathrm{kN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{f} & =\frac{R_{T}}{q_{\text {all }}}=\frac{7411.76}{210}=35.29\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
\text { take } A_{f} & =6.0 \times 6.0=36.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \text { square raft }
\end{aligned}
$$

## 2. Computing the contact pressure

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the raft will be uniform. It is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{6000}{6.0 \times 6.0}=166.67\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.167\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, take $3.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ strip from centerline to centerline and treat the strip as a beam footing. The contact pressure per meter is given by:

$$
q=q_{o} B=0.167 \times 3.0=0.5[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

Figure 123 shows the load diagram and moment diagram for the strip.

## 3. Determining the maximum moment $M_{\text {max }}$

From Figure 123, the maximum bending moment in the longitudinal direction occurs at the face of the column which is:

$$
M_{\max }=q \frac{c^{2}}{2}=0.5 \frac{1.25^{2}}{2}=0.391[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$



## Figure 123: Contact pressure, bending moment and critical section

## 4. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.391}{3.0}}=0.28[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.28[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.
The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.45 \sqrt{\frac{3.0}{0.391}}=1.25
$$

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=1.27, f_{c}=5.0\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=182$

## 5. Check for punching shear

The critical punching shear section lies on a perimeter at a distance $d / 2=0.225[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown inFigure 124.

a) Section I-I


Figure 124: Critical section for punching shear

## Geometry (Figure 124)

Effective depth of the section
Column side
Area of critical punching shear section
Perimeter of critical punching shear section

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d=0.45 \quad[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& a=b=0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& A_{p}=(a+d)^{2}=0.9025\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
& b_{o}=4(a+d)=3.8 \quad[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Loads and stresses

Column load
Soil pressure under the column
Main value of shear strength for concrete C 250

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P=1.5 \quad[\mathrm{MN}] \\
& q_{o}=0.167\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{c p}=0.9 \quad\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
Q_{p}=1.5-0.167 \times 0.9025=1.35[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d} \\
q_{p}=\frac{1.35}{3.8 \times 0.45}=0.79\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{0.5}{0.5}\right) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{p}=0.79\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for punching shear.

## 6. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

Minimum area of steel reinforcement $A_{\text {smin }}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 50 \times 100=7.5\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ Take $A_{\text {smin }}=5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.

The required area of steel reinforcement $A_{s x b}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s x b}=\frac{M_{\max }}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s x b}=\frac{0.391}{182 \times 0.45}=0.004774\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s x b}=47.74\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right]=15.91\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel in both $x$-directions and $y$-directions at the bottom is $6 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}=17.0\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
The details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing are shown in Figure 125.

## Solved Examples


a) Section I-I


Figure 125: Details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the raft

## Example 39: Design of a square raft for four equal edge columns

Design a square raft for four equal edge columns, each carrying a load of $P=1125[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown in Figure 126. Column sides are $0.50 \times 0.50\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ while column reinforcement is $4 \Phi 19$. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=210\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=1.5[\mathrm{~m}]$ and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.


Figure 126: Square raft for four equal edge columns

## 1. Determining raft side $L$

Resultant of loads $R$ at the ground surface level is given by:

$$
R=4 P=4 \times 1125=4500[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Allowable net soil pressure $q_{\text {net }}$ is given by:

$$
q_{\text {net }}=q_{\text {all }}-\gamma_{a} D_{f}=210-20 \times 1.5=180\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{f}=\frac{R}{q_{\text {net }}}=\frac{4500}{180}=25\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
\text { take } A_{f}=5.0 \times 5.0=25.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \text { square raft }
\end{gathered}
$$

## 2. Computing the contact pressure

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the raft will be uniform. It is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{4500}{25.0}=180\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.18\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, take 2.5 [m] strip from centerline to centerline and treat the strip as a beam footing. The contact pressure per meter is given by:

$$
q=q_{o} B=0.18 \times 2.5=0.45[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

Figure 127 shows the load diagram and moment diagram for the strip.

## 3. Determining the maximum moment $M_{\text {max }}$

Critical sections of moments are shown in Figure 127:

$$
M_{\max }=P\left(\frac{L}{2}-c\right)-q \frac{L^{2}}{8}=1.125\left(\frac{5.0}{2}-0.25\right)-0.45 \frac{5.0^{2}}{8}=1.125[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$



Bending moment diagram
Figure 127: Contact pressure, bending moment and critical section

## 4. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{1.125}{2.5}}=0.51[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.55[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.51[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.

## 5. Check for punching shear

The critical punching shear section lies on a perimeter at a distance $d / 2=0.275[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown in Figure 128.


Figure 128: Critical section for punching shear

## Geometry (Figure 128)

Effective depth of the section
Column side
Area of critical punching shear section
Perimeter of critical punching shear section

$$
\begin{aligned}
d=0.55 & {[\mathrm{~m}] } \\
a & =b=0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \\
A_{p} & =(a+d)(a+d / 2)=0.81 \quad\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
b_{o} & =2(a+d / 2)+(a+d)=2.6[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Loads and stresses

Column load
Soil pressure under the column
Main value of shear strength for concrete C 250

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P=1.125[\mathrm{MN}] \\
& q_{o}=0.18\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
& q_{c p}=0.9 \quad\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
Q_{p}=1.125-0.18 \times 0.81=0.98[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d} \\
q_{p}=\frac{0.98}{2.6 \times 0.55}=0.69\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{0.5}{0.5}\right) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{p}=0.69\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for punching shear.

## 6. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

Minimum area of steel reinforcement $A_{\text {smin }}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 60 \times 100=9.0\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
Take $A_{s \text { min }}=5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.
The required area of steel reinforcement $A_{s x t}$ is:

$$
A_{s x t}=\frac{M_{\max }}{k_{2} d}
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s x t}=\frac{1.125}{172 \times 0.55}=0.011892\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 2.5 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s x t}=118.92\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 2.5 \mathrm{~m}\right]=47.57\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel in $x$-directionsat the top is $13 \Phi 22 / \mathrm{m}=49.4\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
From Figure 129, the maximum bending moment in $y$-direction occurs at the face of the column which is:

$$
M_{y}=q \frac{c^{2}}{2}=0.45 \frac{1.0^{2}}{2}=0.225[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$

 Figure 129: Contact pressure, bending moment and critical section The required area of steel reinforcement $A_{\text {syb }}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s y b}=\frac{M_{\max }}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s y b}=\frac{0.225}{172 \times 0.55}=0.002378\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 2.5 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s y b}=23.78\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 2.5 \mathrm{~m}\right]=9.54\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel in $y$-directions at the bottom is $5 \Phi 16 / \mathrm{m}=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
The details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing are shown in Figure 130.

Solved Examples

a) Section I-I

b) Plan

Figure 130: Details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the raft

## Example 40: Design of a square raft for 9 equal columns

Design a square raft for 9 equal columns, each of $0.50 \times 0.50$ [m], reinforced by $4 \Phi 19$, carrying a load of $P=1500[\mathrm{kN}]$ as shown inFigure 131. The distance center to center of columns is $3.0[\mathrm{~m}]$. The allowable soil pressure is $q_{\text {all }}=210\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ at a depth of $D_{f}=2.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ and average unit weight of the soil and concrete is $\gamma_{a}=20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.



Figure 131: Square raft for 9 equal columns

## 1. Determining the raft side $L$

Resultant of loads $R$ at the ground surface level is given by:

$$
R=9 P=9 \times 1500=13500[\mathrm{kN}]
$$

Allowable net soil pressure $q_{\text {net }}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {net }}=q_{\text {all }}-\gamma_{a} D_{f}=210-20 \times 2.0=170\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \\
-221-
\end{gathered}
$$

Area of footing $A_{f}$ is obtained from:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{f}=\frac{R}{q_{\text {net }}}=\frac{13500}{170}=79.41\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
& \text { take } A_{f}=9.0 \times 9.0=81.0\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \text { square raft }
\end{aligned}
$$

## 2. Computing the contact pressure

The contact pressure per meter square under the base of the footing will be uniform. It is given by:

$$
q_{o}=\frac{R}{A_{f}}=\frac{13500}{81}=166.67\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]=0.167\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
$$

Now, take $3.0[\mathrm{~m}]$ strip from centerline to centerline and treat the strip as a beam footing. The contact pressure per meter is given by:

$$
q=q_{o} B=0.167 \times 3.0=0.5[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}]
$$

Figure 132 shows the load diagram and moment diagram for the beam footing.

## 3. Determining the maximum moment $M_{m a x}$

From Figure 132, the maximum bending moment occurs at the face of the column which is:

$$
M_{\max }=q \frac{c^{2}}{2}=0.5 \frac{1.25^{2}}{2}=0.391[\mathrm{MN} . \mathrm{m}]
$$



Load diagram


Figure 132: Contact pressure, bending moment and critical sections

## 4. Determining the depth required to resist the moment $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$

From Table 2 for $f_{c}=9.5\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $f_{s}=200\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is $k_{1}=0.766$, while the coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section is $k_{2}=172\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.

The maximum depth $d_{m}$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M_{\max }}{B}} \\
d_{m}=0.766 \sqrt{\frac{0.391}{3.0}}=0.28[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{gathered}
$$

Take $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]>d_{m}=0.28[\mathrm{~m}]$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section.
The corresponding $k_{1}$ for $d=0.45[\mathrm{~m}]$ is given by:

$$
k_{1}=0.45 \sqrt{\frac{3.0}{0.391}}=1.25
$$

From Table 2 at $k_{1}=1.27, f_{c}=5.0\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ and $k_{2}=182$

## Solved Examples

## 5. Check for punching shear

The critical punching shear section lies on a perimeter at a distance $d / 2=0.225[\mathrm{~m}]$ from the face of the column as shown in Figure 133.

a) Section I-I


Figure 133: Critical section for punching shear

## Geometry (Figure 133)

Effective depth of the section
Column side
Area of critical punching shear section
Perimeter of critical punching shear section

## Loads and stresses

Column load
Soil pressure under the column
Main value of shear strength for concrete C 250

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d=0.45 \quad[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& a=b=0.5[\mathrm{~m}] \\
& A_{p}=(a+d)^{2}=0.9025\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right] \\
& b_{o}=4(a+d)=3.8 \quad[\mathrm{~m}]
\end{aligned}
$$

## Check for section capacity

The punching shear force $Q_{p}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \\
Q_{p}=1.5-0.167 \times 0.9025=1.35[\mathrm{MN}]
\end{gathered}
$$

The punching shear stress $q_{p}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{\mathrm{o}} d} \\
q_{p}=\frac{1.35}{3.8 \times 0.45}=0.79\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \\
q_{\text {pall }}=\left(0.5+\frac{0.5}{0.5}\right) 0.9 \leq 0.9 \\
q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

$q_{\text {pall }}=0.9\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]>q_{p}=0.79\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, the section is safe for punching shear.

## 6. Computing the area of steel reinforcement

Minimum area of steel reinforcement $A_{\operatorname{smin}}=0.15 \% A_{c}=0.0015 \times 50 \times 100=7.5\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$ Take $A_{s \text { min }}=5 \Phi 16=10.1\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$.

The required area of steel reinforcement $A_{s}$ is:

$$
\begin{gathered}
A_{s x b}=\frac{M_{\max }}{k_{2} d} \\
A_{s x b}=\frac{0.391}{182 \times 0.45}=0.004774\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right] \\
A_{s x b}=47.74\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / 3.0 \mathrm{~m}\right]=15.91\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Chosen steel in both $x$-directions and $y$-directions at the bottom is $6 \Phi 19 / \mathrm{m}=17.0\left[\mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{m}\right]$
The details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the footing are shown in Figure 134.

Solved Examples

a) Section I-I


Figure 134: Details of reinforcement in plan and section $a-a$ through the raft

## Part B Theoretical Basis

## 1- Determine the bearing capacity of footing

Determine the bearing capacity of footing may be carried out according to the Egyptian Code of Practice [1], ECP as follows:

## 1.1- Vertical concentrated load

Ultimate bearing capacity $q_{u t}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{u l t}=C N_{c} \lambda_{c}+\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q}+\gamma_{2} B N_{\gamma} \lambda_{\gamma} \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where:
$q_{\text {ult }} \quad$ Ultimate bearing capacity, $\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.
$N_{c}, N_{q}, N_{\gamma}$ Bearing capacity factors depended on the angle of internal friction $\varphi,[-]$.
$\lambda_{c}, \lambda_{q}, \lambda_{\gamma}$ Shape factors depended on the shape of the footing in plan, [-].
$C \quad$ Cohesion of the soil, $\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.
$\varphi \quad$ Angle of internal friction of the soil, $\left[{ }^{\circ}\right]$.
$\gamma_{1} \quad$ Unit weight of the soil above the foundation level, $\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.
$\gamma_{2} \quad$ Unit weight of the soil under the foundation level, $\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.
$D_{f} \quad$ Foundation depth, [m].
$B \quad$ Width of the footing (the smallest side), [m].
$L \quad$ Length of the footing, [m].
Bearing capacity factors $N_{q}, N_{c}$ and $N_{\gamma}$ are determinate from:
a) Case of soil having $\varphi>0$

$$
\begin{align*}
& N_{q}=e^{\pi \tan \varphi} \tan ^{2}\left(45+\frac{\varphi}{2}\right)  \tag{2}\\
& N_{c}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \cot \varphi  \tag{3}\\
& N_{\gamma}=\left(N_{q}-1\right) \tan \varphi \tag{4}
\end{align*}
$$

b) Case of soil having $\varphi=0$
$N_{c}=5$,
$N_{q}=1$
and $\quad N_{\gamma}=0$

## Shape factors $\lambda_{c}, \lambda_{q}$ and $\lambda_{\gamma}$ are obtained from Table 14

Table 14 Shape factors $\lambda_{c}, \lambda_{q}$ and $\lambda_{r}$

| Footing shape in plan | $\lambda_{c}, \lambda_{q}$ | $\lambda_{\gamma}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Strip | 1 | 1 |
| Rectangular | $1+0.3 B / L$ | $1-0.3 B / L$ |
| Squar or circular | 1.3 | 0.7 |

## 1.2- Vertical eccentric load

When deatrmining ultimate bearing capacity for a footing having an eccentric load (Figure 135), the total footing area of $(B \times L)$ is replaced by an effective footing area of $\left(B^{`} \times L^{`}\right)$ that load applies in the center of it. Ultimate bearing capacity $q_{u l t}$ is determined by the effective footing area as:

$$
\begin{gather*}
q_{u l t}=C N_{c} \lambda_{c}+\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q}+\gamma_{2} B^{\prime} N_{\gamma} \lambda_{\gamma}  \tag{5}\\
B^{\prime}=B-2 e_{x}  \tag{6}\\
L^{\prime}=L-2 e_{y} \tag{7}
\end{gather*}
$$

where:

| $e_{x}$ | Eccentricity in $x$-direction, $[\mathrm{m}]$. |
| :--- | :--- |
| $e_{y}$ | Eccentricity in $y$-direction, $[\mathrm{m}]$. |
| $B^{{f54cf78e0-13c7-4410-aa24-094eedfbcf1c}}$ | Length of the effective footing, $[\mathrm{m}]$. |



Figure 135: Vertical eccentric load and the effective footing

## 1.3- Inclined load

Ultimate bearing capacity reduces when the angle $\delta$ between the applied load and the vertical direction exceeds as shown in Figure 136. In this case ultimate bearing capacity $q_{u l t}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{u l t}=C N_{c} \lambda_{c} i_{c}+\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q} i_{q}+\gamma_{2} B N_{\gamma} \lambda_{\gamma} i_{\gamma} \tag{8}
\end{equation*}
$$

where:
$i_{c}, i_{q}, i_{\gamma} \quad$ Factors depended on the angle $\delta$ between the load and the vertical direction, [-].
$\delta \quad$ Angle between the load and the vertical direction, $\left[{ }^{\circ}\right]$.


Figure 136: Inclined load
a) Case of soil having $\varphi=0$ and $C \neq 0$

$$
\begin{gather*}
i_{q}=1  \tag{9}\\
i_{c}=0.5+0.5 \sqrt{1-\frac{H_{b}}{A C}} \tag{10}
\end{gather*}
$$

where:
$H_{b} \quad$ The horizontal component for the ultimate bearing capacity, $[\mathrm{kN}]$.
$A \quad$ Area of the footing, $\left[\mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.
First it should be chosen an area to achieve the condition $\left(A \times C>H_{b}\right)$
b) Case of soil having $\varphi \neq 0$ and $C=0$

$$
\begin{align*}
& i_{q}=(1-0.7 \tan \delta)^{3}  \tag{11}\\
& i_{\gamma}=(1-\tan \delta)^{3} \tag{12}
\end{align*}
$$

## c) Case of soil having $\varphi \neq 0$ and $C \neq 0$

$$
\begin{gather*}
i_{q}=\left[1-0.7 \frac{H_{b}}{V_{b}+A C \cot \varphi}\right]^{3}  \tag{13}\\
i_{\gamma}=\left[1-\frac{H_{b}}{V_{b}+A C \cot \varphi}\right]^{3}  \tag{14}\\
i_{c}=i_{q}-\frac{1-i_{q}}{N_{q}-1} \tag{15}
\end{gather*}
$$

where:
$V_{b} \quad$ Vertical component of the ultimate bearing capacity, $[\mathrm{kN}]$.
$H_{b} \quad$ Horizontal component of the ultimate bearing capacity, [kN].

$$
\begin{align*}
H_{b} & =F_{b} \times H  \tag{16}\\
V_{b} & =F_{b} \times V \tag{17}
\end{align*}
$$

where:
$F_{b} \quad$ Factor of safety, [-].
$H \quad$ Horizontal component of the footing load, [kN].
$V \quad$ Vertical component of the footing load, [kN].

## 1.4- Layered soil

Ultimate bearing capacity for a footing resting on layered soil may be carried simply as indicadet in the following setps:

1) Determine the ultimate bearing capacity for the first layer.
2) Determine the ultimate bearing capacity for the second layer with assuming an imaginary footing lies at the top of the layer with dimension $\left(B+h_{1}\right) \times\left(L+h_{1}\right)$ as shown in Figure 137.
3) Repeat the previous step for the other layers.
4) The ultimate bearing capacity is the smallest value.


Figure 137: Layered soil

## 1.5- Effect of water table on bearing capacity

Water table has an effect on the third term of the bearing capacity equation. Three cases for the water table effect may be considered as follows:
a) The foundation level is under the ground water table as shown in Figure 138.


Figure 138: Foundation level is under the ground water table
Ultimate bearing capacity $q_{u l t}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gather*}
q_{u l t}=C N_{c} \lambda_{c} i_{c}+q^{\prime} N_{q} \lambda_{q}+\gamma_{\text {sub }} B N_{\gamma} \lambda_{\gamma}  \tag{18}\\
q^{`}=\gamma_{1} \times\left(D_{f}-h\right)+\gamma_{\text {sub }} h \tag{19}
\end{gather*}
$$

where:
$q \quad$ Effective pressure at foundation level, $[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m} 2]$.
$\gamma_{s u b}$
Submerged unit weight of the soil, $\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.
b) The foundation level is under the bed level of a canal or a river as for a pair as shown in Figure 139.


Figure 139: Foundation level is under the bed level of a canal
Ultimate bearing capacity $q_{u t}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gather*}
q_{u l t}=C N_{c} \lambda_{c} i_{c}+q^{\prime} N_{q} \lambda_{q}+\gamma_{\text {sub }} B N_{\gamma} \lambda_{\gamma}  \tag{20}\\
q^{`}=\gamma_{\text {sub }} D_{f} \tag{21}
\end{gather*}
$$

c) The ground water table under the foundation level as shown in Figure 140.


Figure 140: Ground water table under the foundation level
Ultimate bearing capacity $q_{u t}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{gather*}
q_{u l t}=C N_{c} \lambda_{c}+\gamma_{1} D_{f} N_{q} \lambda_{q}+\gamma_{2}^{\prime} B N_{\gamma} \lambda_{\gamma}  \tag{22}\\
\gamma_{2}^{\prime}=\gamma_{\text {sub }}+\frac{d}{B}\left(\gamma-\gamma_{\text {sub }}\right) \tag{2}
\end{gather*}
$$

## 1.6- Allowable and net bearing capacities

It will be important to define some terms relating to bearing capacities.

## a) Ultimate bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {ult }}$

The ultimate bearing capacity $q_{u l t}$ is defined as the least pressure on the soil which would cause shear failure of the supporting soil immediately below the footing.

## b) Allowable bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {all }}$

The allowable bearing capacity is allowable pressure on the soil due to the footing load that can be carried safely by the soil. The allowable bearing capacity is equal to the ultimate bearing capacity divided by a specified factor of safety $F S$, as example 2.5 .

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{a l l}=\frac{q_{u l t}}{F S} \tag{24}
\end{equation*}
$$

## c) Net allowable bearing capacity $\boldsymbol{q}_{\text {net }}$

It is noticed that the allowable bearing capacity equations are based on gross pressure under the footing (Eq. 25 and Figure 141), while those of designing the footing or determining the settlement are based on the net pressure under the footing (Eq. 26 and Figure 141).


Figure 141: Gross and net load

$$
\begin{align*}
& q_{\text {all }}=\frac{P_{T}}{A}  \tag{25}\\
& q_{\text {net }}=\frac{P}{A} \tag{26}
\end{align*}
$$

where:
$P_{T} \quad$ Total load at the foundation level including applied load at the surface, the self weight of the footing and the weight of the soil, $[\mathrm{kN}]$.
$A \quad$ Footing area in plan, $[\mathrm{m}]$.
$P \quad$ Applied load at the surface, $[\mathrm{kN}]$.

A relation between the allowable bearing capacity of the soil and the net allowable bearing capacity is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{\text {net }}=q_{a l l}-\gamma_{a} D_{f} \tag{27}
\end{equation*}
$$

where:
$\gamma_{a} \quad$ Average unit weight of the soil and the footing material, $\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.
$\gamma_{a}$ may be taken as $20\left[\mathrm{kN} / \mathrm{m}^{3}\right]$.

A relation between the total load at the foundation level and the applied load at the surface can be obtained from Eq. 25,26 and 27 as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{T}=\frac{P}{\left(1-\frac{\gamma_{a} D_{f}}{q_{a l l}}\right)} \tag{28}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 2- Determine Reinforced Concrete Design of Shallow Foundations

Design of shallow foundations in this book is carried out according to the Egyptian Code of Practice [1], $E C P$, using the method of working stress. Design of section for footings and rafts is carried out only for the moment, first. Then a check for shearing force for strip footing or check for punching shear for other types of foundations is carried out. Other checks such as bond stress and dowels are not required. The section is chosen to resist moment and shear without additional reinforcement.

## 2.1- Critical sections for moment

Sections for computing moment are taken at (Figure 142):

- The face of the column or the reinforced concrete wall.
- The mid-distance between the face of the steel column and the edge of the base plate.
- The mid-distance between the face of the brick wall and the axis of the wall.


Figure 142: Critical sections for moments

## 2.2- Design for flexure moment

The design procedure is based on the stress diagram shown in Figure 143. In this method, a linearly elastic relationship between stresses and strains is assumed for both the concrete and the reinforcing steel. The codes assume that the maximum stress produced by the worst combinations of working loads does not exceed a specified allowable working stress value. When the applied moment exceeds the moment capacity at the designed balanced section, the area of compression reinforcement is calculated on the assumption that the additional moment will be carried by compression and additional tension reinforcement.


Figure 143: Contact Distribution of stresses and forces according to ECP (working stress method)
In designing procedure, a suitable depth $d[\mathrm{~m}]$ of the section is assumed first. Then, the maximum depth $d_{m}[\mathrm{~m}]$ required to resist the applied moment as a singly reinforced section is obtained. The reinforcing steel area is determined based on whether the assumed depth d greater than, less than, or equal to $d_{m}$.

The value of the ratio $\xi=z / d$ of neutral axis to effective depth at balanced condition is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\xi=\frac{n}{n+\frac{f_{s}}{f_{c}}} \tag{29}
\end{equation*}
$$

where:
$z \quad$ The neutral axis depth, [m].
$f_{s} \quad$ Tensile stress of steel, $\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.
$f_{c} \quad$ Compressive stress of concrete, $\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.
$n \quad$ Modular ratio, $n=E_{s} / E_{c}$, is the ratio between moduli of elasticity of steel and concrete. The value of the modular ratio is $n=15$

The coefficient $k_{1}$ to obtain the section depth at balanced condition is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
k_{1}=\sqrt{\frac{2}{f_{c} \xi\left(1-\frac{\xi}{3}\right)}} \tag{30}
\end{equation*}
$$

The maximum depth $d_{m}[\mathrm{~m}]$ as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
d_{m}=k_{1} \sqrt{\frac{M}{b}} \tag{31}
\end{equation*}
$$

where:

```
M Moment at a section obtained from analysis, [MN.m].
b Width of the section to be designed, [m].
```

Check if the assumed depth $d$ is not exceeded the maximum depth $d_{m}$ to resist moment as a singly reinforced section.

## Singly reinforced section

If $d \geq d_{m}$, then the section is designed as singly reinforced section. The tensile steel reinforcement is calculated as follows:

Determine the neutral axis $z[\mathrm{~m}]$ corresponding to the depth $d$ by iteration from:

$$
\begin{equation*}
z=\sqrt{\frac{2 n M(d-z)}{b f_{s}\left(d-\frac{\mathrm{Z}}{3}\right)}} \tag{32}
\end{equation*}
$$

The value of the ratio $\xi$ corresponding to the depth $d$ is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\xi=\frac{z}{d} \tag{33}
\end{equation*}
$$

The coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile reinforcement for singly reinforced section, is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
k_{2}=f_{s}\left(1-\frac{\xi}{3}\right) \tag{34}
\end{equation*}
$$

The area of tensile steel reinforcement $A_{s}\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ is then given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{s}=\frac{M}{k_{2} d} \tag{35}
\end{equation*}
$$

The coefficients $k_{1}$ and $k_{2}$ may be also obtained from the known charts of reinforced concrete. Tables 1 and 2 show coefficients $k_{1}$ and $k_{2}$ for singly reinforced rectangular sections. The units used to obtain coefficients $k_{1}$ and $k_{2}$ in the tables are [MN] and [m].

## Doubly reinforced section

If $d_{m}>d$ then the section is designed as doubly reinforced section. Both top and bottom reinforcement are required. However, it is prefer to design the section of foundation as a singly reinforced section by increasing the depth but in some cases, the designer refers to this solution. The tension and compression reinforcement is calculated as follows:

The limiting moment resisted by concrete compression and tensile steel $M_{\text {lim }}$ [MN.m] as a singly reinforced section is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
M_{\lim }=\left(\frac{d}{d_{m}}\right)^{2} M \tag{36}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, the moment resisted by compression steel and additional tensile steel $\Delta M$ [MN.m] is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta M=M-M_{\lim } \tag{37}
\end{equation*}
$$

The coefficient $k_{2}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ to obtain the tensile steel as singly reinforced section, is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
k_{2}=f_{s}\left(1-\frac{\xi}{3}\right) \tag{38}
\end{equation*}
$$

The area of tensile reinforcement $A_{s 1}\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ to resist $M_{\text {lim }}$ is then given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{s 1}=\frac{M_{\text {lim }}}{k_{2} d} \tag{39}
\end{equation*}
$$

The required additional tensile steel $A_{s 2}\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ to resist $\Delta M$ is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{s 2}=\frac{\Delta M}{f_{s}\left(d-d^{`}\right)} \tag{40}
\end{equation*}
$$

where:
d Concrete cover to center of compression reinforcing, [m].
The total required tensile reinforcement $A_{s}\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ to resist $M_{\mathrm{lim}}+\Delta M$ is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{s}=A_{s 1}-A_{s 2} \tag{41}
\end{equation*}
$$

The required compression steel $A_{s}\left[\mathrm{~m}^{2}\right]$ to resist $\Delta M$ is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{s}^{\prime}=\frac{\Delta M}{f_{s}^{`}\left(d-d^{\prime}\right)} \tag{42}
\end{equation*}
$$

where:
$f_{s} \quad$ Compressive stress of steel in compression $\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, which is obtained from:

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{s}^{\prime}=n f_{c} \frac{z-d^{`}}{z} \tag{43}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 2.3- Check for punching shear

The ECP code for working stress method assumes the critical punching shear section on a perimeter at a distance $d / 2$ from the face of the column as shown in Figure 144.


Figure 144: Critical section for punching shear according to $E C P$ (working stress method)
The punching shear force at the section $Q_{p}[\mathrm{MN}]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{p}=P-q_{o} A_{p} \tag{44}
\end{equation*}
$$

where:

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{p}=\frac{Q_{p}}{b_{o} d} \tag{45}
\end{equation*}
$$

$P \quad$ Column load, [MN].
$q_{o} \quad$ Upward soil pressure under the column, $\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.
$A_{p} \quad$ Area of critical punching shear section, $\left[\mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$.
$=(a+d)^{2}$ for square columns
$=(a+d)(b+d)$ for rectangular columns
$=\pi(D+d)^{2} / 4$ for circular columns
$a, b \quad$ Column sides, [m].
$D \quad$ Column diameter, [m].
The punching shear stress $q_{p}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:
where:
d Depth to resist punching shear [m]
$b_{o} \quad$ Perimeter of critical punching shear section [m]
$=4(a+d)$ for square columns
$=2(a+b+2 d)$ for rectangular columns
$=\pi(D+d)$ for circular columns
The allowable concrete punching strength $q_{\text {pall }}\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{p a l l}=\left(0.5+\frac{a}{b}\right) q_{c p} \leq q_{c p} \tag{46}
\end{equation*}
$$

where:
$q_{c p} \quad$ The main value of shear strength $\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$ according to Table 3.
$a \quad$ The smallest column side.
Normally, it is impracticable to provide shear reinforcement in slabs and footings. In such cases, concrete alone should resist the punching shear without contribution of the shear reinforcement. The slab thickness is considered to be safe for punching stress, if the punching shear stress is less than the allowable concrete punching strength where:

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{p} \geq q_{p} \tag{47}
\end{equation*}
$$

If the above basic condition is not satisfied, the thickness will have to be increased to resist the punching shear.

## Mechanical properties of concrete according to $\boldsymbol{E C P}$

$E C P$ defines the concrete grade according to the standard cube compressive strength of concrete $f_{c u}$ (characteristic strength). The standard cube has 15 [cm] side length. Thus, grade C250 concrete has $f_{c u}=250\left[\mathrm{~kg} / \mathrm{cm}^{2}\right]$. According to $E C P$ the mechanical properties of concrete, characteristic strength $f_{c u}$, concrete cylinder strength $f_{c}$, compressive stress of concrete for bending or compression with big eccentricity $f_{c}$, and main value of punching shear strength $q_{c p}$ can be taken as in Table 15.

Table 15: Determination of tension reinforcement in longitudinal direction

| Concrete grade | C150 | C175 | C200 | C225 | C250 | C275 | C300 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $f_{c u}\left[\mathrm{~kg} / \mathrm{cm}^{2}\right]$ | 150 | 175 | 200 | 225 | 250 | 275 | 300 |
| $f_{c}^{\prime}=0.8 f_{c u}\left[\mathrm{~kg} / \mathrm{cm}^{2}\right]$ | 120 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 | 220 | 250 |
| $f_{c}\left[\mathrm{~kg} / \mathrm{cm}^{2}\right]$ | 65 | 70 | 80 | 90 | 95 | 100 | 105 |
| $q_{c p}\left[\mathrm{~kg} / \mathrm{cm}^{2}\right]$ | 7 | 7 | 8 | 8 | 9 | 9 | 10 |

To convert to $\left[\mathrm{MN} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right]$, divide by 10

## 3- Types of shallow foundations

### 3.1. Isolated footing

An isolated footing is a concrete slab or block under an individual load or column. It may be a square, rectangular or circular footing, Figure 145.


Figure 145: Isolated footing

### 3.2. Strip footing

When a number of columns in a row are to be supported on a soil of low bearing capacity, isolated footings if provided would overlap. A practical solution would be a footing to support all the columns of the row. Such a footing is called a "Strip footing", Figure 146. It may be used also under a brick or R. C. wall, Figure 146.


Figure 146: Strip footing

### 3.3. Combined footing

If a speared footing is provided for an external column, it will lead to unstable structure system. Therefore, the external column must be connected at least with another internal column by a footing. Such a footing is called a "Combined footing". Combined footing is also commonly used when isolated footing for two columns or more if provided would overlap.

## a) Combined rectangular footing

In the design of rectangular footing, it is generally assumed that the contact pressure distribution is uniform. In fact, many column loads are unsymmetrical. To achieve a uniform contact pressure distribution under the footing, it is necessary to coincide the center of the footing area with the point of application of the resultant. It can be carried out by extending the footing so that the center of area of the footing coincides with the center of gravity of the external loads. This is easy to be done by rectangular footing, Figure 147.


## b) Combined trapezoidal footing

A special case of footings is the trapezoidal footing (Figure 148), which may be used to carry two columns of unequal loads when distance outside the column of the heaviest load is limited. In such case, using a rectangular footing may lead to the resultant of loads does not fall at the middle length of the footing. To overcome this difficulty, a trapezoidal footing is used in such a way that the center of gravity of the footing lies under the resultant of the loads. Consequently, the distribution of contact pressure will be uniform.


Figure 148: Combined trapezoidal footing

### 3.4. Strap footing

If the distances between columns are large, a composed of two spread footings connected by a tie girder or a strap may be used as an economical system instead of combined footing (Figure 149). Strap footing may also serve a need of bridging over areas that cannot be loaded.


Figure 149: Combined strap footing

### 3.5. Circular raft

Ring or circular rafts can be used for cylindrical structures such as chimneys, silos, storage tanks, $T V$-towers and other structures. In this case, ring or circular raft is the best suitable foundation to the natural geometry of such structures (Figure 150). The design of circular rafts is quite similar to that of other rafts.


Figure 150: Circular raft

### 3.6. Raft

If distances between columns are small, a slab contains all columns called a raft may be used instead of spread footings, Figure 151.

Theoretical Basis


Figure 151: Raft

## References

[1] ECP 464 (1989): The Egyptian Code of Practice, Design and Construction of Reinforced Concrete Structures. (In Arabic).
[2] ECP 196 (1995): The Egyptian Code of Soil Mechanics, Design and Construction of Foundations. (In Arabic).
[3] El Gendy, M./ El Gendy, A. (2015): Analysis and Design of Slab Foundations by the Method of Finite Elements-Program ELPLA, GEOTEC Software Inc., Canada. (Multi languages).
[4] El Gendy, M./El Gendy, A. (2015): User's Guide for the program ELPLA, GEOTEC Software Inc. , Canada. (In Arabic, English and German).
[5] El Gendy, M./ El Gendy, A. (2015): Tutorial Manual for the program ELPLA, GEOTEC Software Inc., Canada. (In Arabic, English and German).
[6] El Gendy, M./ El Gendy, A. (2015): Theory used in the formulation of ELPLA, GEOTEC Software Inc., Canada. (In English and German).
[7] El Gendy, M./ El Gendy, A. (2015): Reinforced concrete design by program ELPLA, GEOTEC Software Inc., Canada. (In English).

رقم الإيداع بدار الكتب والوثائق القومية

2017/5392

